

BATTLE TASK STANDARDS – INFANTRY

(ENGLISH)

WARNING

ALTHOUGH NOT CLASSIFIED, THIS PUBLICATION, OR ANY PART OF IT, MAY BE EXEMPTED FROM DISCLOSURE TO THE PUBLIC UNDER THE ACCESS TO INFORMATION ACT. ALL ELEMENTS OF INFORMATION CONTAINED HEREIN MUST BE CLOSELY SCRUTINIZED TO ASCERTAIN WHETHER OR NOT THE PUBLICATION, OR ANY PART OF IT, MAY BE RELEASED.

Issued on authority of the Chief of the Defence Staff

Canada 

BACK COVER LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

BATTLE TASK STANDARDS - INFANTRY

(ENGLISH)

WARNING

ALTHOUGH NOT CLASSIFIED, THIS PUBLICATION, OR ANY PART OF IT, MAY BE EXEMPTED FROM DISCLOSURE TO THE PUBLIC UNDER THE ACCESS TO INFORMATION ACT. ALL ELEMENTS OF INFORMATION CONTAINED HEREIN MUST BE CLOSELY SCRUTINIZED TO ASCERTAIN WHETHER OR NOT THE PUBLICATION, OR ANY PART OF IT, MAY BE RELEASED.

Issued on authority of the Chief of the Defence Staff

OPI : DAT 3

1998-08-15

Canada 

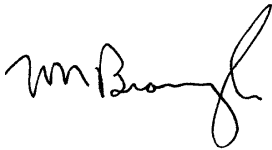
BATTLE TASK STANDARDS - INFANTRY

FOREWORD

Infantry Battle Task Standards, B-GL-383-002/PT-015 (INTERIM), is issued under the authority of Commander Land Force Doctrine and Training System, and is effective upon receipt for use in regular and reserve units. The development of these Battle Task Standards has been in concert with approved doctrine and is part of the Army training strategy to implement a systems approach to collective training. Each battle task outlined in this document provides commanders with common standards against which performance can be measured, and can be used to assist commanders in providing direction and guidance in the planning and conduct of collective training.

Direction for the conduct, evaluation and resource allocation of collective training is contained in Field Training Regulations, B-GL-304-002/PT-001. The Director Army Training is responsible for the content, production and publication of this document. Comments and suggestions are solicited using the format on page iii. Direct your comments and suggestions to the following address:

Director Army Training 3
Land Force Doctrine and Training System
PO Box 17000 Station Forces
Kingston ON K7K 7B4



W. N. Brough
Colonel
Director Army Training
for Commander Land Force Doctrine and Training System

THIS PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

THIS PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

INTRODUCTION

ORGANIZATION

1. The role of the infantry is to close with and destroy the enemy. Infantry forces do not operate alone, but perform their missions in close cooperation with other arms, fighting as part of brigade groups, battle groups, combat teams, and company groups. Consequently, Battle Group and Combat Team Battle Task Standards (BTS) will be used to train and evaluate the infantry at the battalion and company level respectively. This BTS publication, on the other hand, lists those tasks performed by mounted or dismounted rifle sections and platoons; the combat support platoons; rifle company tasks not found at the combat team level; and specific tasks for the battalion headquarters. The level of detail provided is intended to assist in standardizing the training and evaluation of tasks performed by regular and reserve infantry units.

TRAINING CONSIDERATIONS

2. Although the battle tasks listed in this BTS are those which any infantry company, platoon or section could be required to perform in operations, resource and time constraints will make it impractical to train on each battle task during every training cycle. Before the beginning of the training cycle, company, platoon and section commanders, in conjunction with their higher commander, must identify the high priority battle tasks which they will train for and be evaluated upon during the upcoming training cycle. Factors to be considered in the identification of high priority battle tasks include:

- a. the higher commander's direction/guidance
- b. a mission analysis and estimate for any upcoming operations
- c. the current level of training
- d. any weaknesses identified as a result of previous evaluations and training
- e. the length of time since training for each battle task was last conducted
- f. the introduction of new doctrine or equipment

- g. the resources and time available
- h. any other factors, which the element commander and the higher commander decide, are relevant.

3. Once the high priority battle tasks are decided upon, it is the responsibility of the higher commander to ensure the required resources, in accordance with the Field Training Regulations, are made available. Any shortfall in resources should, under normal circumstances, result in an adjustment to the battle tasks to be trained for and evaluated, not a reduction in the standards.

EVALUATION

4. A three level evaluation system has been adopted:
- a. Effective. An 'Effective' (Eff) rating indicates task performance met the standards in all respects
 - b. Needs Practice. A 'Needs Practice' (NPrac) rating indicates only minor shortcomings in task performance which are expected to be corrected in subsequent evaluation iterations with little or no further training required
 - c. Ineffective. An 'Ineffective' (Ineff) rating indicates significant shortcomings in task performance requiring further training before re-evaluation.

NUMBERING

5. The BTS have been laid out and numbered by combat function and operation of war or transitional phase, as illustrated in the matrix on page ix. A single letter arm indicator is used as a prefix to each BTS number where appropriate to illustrate Corps or Branch specific tasks. Those BTS listed without an arm indicator refer to BTS common to two or more Corps or Branches. A letter suffix to each BTS number is used to define the unit level for each task element, as listed below:

- a. A - individual (only used in IBTS)
- b. B - section / crew / detachment

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

- c. C - platoon / troop
 - d. D - subunit
 - e. E - combat team
 - f. F - battalion / regiment / battle group
 - g. G - brigade group.
6. Only those common or Corps specific BTS applicable to the Infantry are tabled in this publication.

APPLICATION

7. Note that some BTS can be read as mission statements, while others are tasks or drills, which must be achieved in order to accomplish a specific mission. These tasks and drills are considered significant enough to warrant an evaluation and resource-planning tool.

8. For each BTS, some iterations should be performed in the presence of civilians, government organizations, non-government organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the press. Moreover, for each BTS, some iterations should be performed under NBC conditions.

CONCLUSION

9. The BTS contain sufficient detail and are formatted in order that they can be used as the actual marking guide during evaluations. While they are authoritative, they nevertheless still require judgement in application as training must be performance oriented, and performance must be judged on task accomplishment, not just process.

THIS PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

**INFANTRY TASKS LINKED TO COMBAT
FUNCTIONS AND OPERATIONS / PHASES OF
WAR**

BTS	TASK	OFF	DEF	DELAY	TRANS
	COMMAND				
1001	Battle Procedure	X	X	X	X
1002	Establish and Operate a CP	X	X	X	X
	FIREPOWER				
2001	Employ Indirect Fire Support	X	X	X	X
2002	Engage Targets with Main and Secondary Armament	X	X	X	X
I2701	Mortar Platoon Process Call for Fire	X	X	X	X
I2702	Mortar Platoon Fires a Final Protective Fire (FPF)	X	X	X	X
I2703	Mortar Platoon Fire Simultaneous Missions	X	X	X	X
I2704	Mortar Operates a FSCC	X	X	X	X
I2705	Mortar Platoon Occupies a Baseplate Position	X	X	X	X
	INFORMATION OPERATIONS				
3001	Maintain Operations Security	X	X	X	X
3002	Screen	X	X	X	X
3003	Establish and Operate an OP	X	X	X	X
3004	Conduct a Dismounted Recce Patrol	X	X	X	X
3005	Conduct Area Recce	X	X	X	X
3006	Conduct Route / Point Recce	X	X	X	X

BTS	TASK	OFF	DEF	DELAY	TRANS
3007	Conduct Intelligence Operations	X	X	X	X
3011	Conduct an Engineer / Pioneer Recce	X	X	X	X
3012	Recce a Demolition Target	X	X	X	X
3013	Recce a Gap Crossing Site	X	X	X	X
3014	Recce an Enemy Minefield	X	X	X	X
13701	Anti-Armour Platoon Conducts Screen and Flank Security	X	X	X	X
13702	Conduct a Lay Back Patrol	X	X	X	X
	MANOEUVRE				
4001	Attack (Sect / Pl)	X			
4001	Attack (Coy)	X			
4002	Establish a Fire Base	X			
4003	Breakout	X			
4004	Raid	X			
4005	Fight in a Built-up Area (Pl)	X			
4005	Fight in a Built-up Area (Coy)	X			
4006	Woods Clearing	X			
4007	Ambush	X			
4011	Engineers / Pioneers Support an Attack on a Fortified Position	X			
14071	Clear Trench System	X			
14072	Clear Bunker	X			
14073	Conduct Airmobile Operations	X			
14074	Conduct Sniper Mission	X	X	X	

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

BTS	TASK	OFF	DEF	DELAY	TRANS
4101	Defend		X		
4102	Guard a Reserved Demolition		X		
4103	Defend in a Built-up Area (Pl)		X		
4103	Defend in a Built-up Area (Coy)		X		
4201	Delay			X	
4202	Guard			X	
4301	Advance to Contact				X
4302	Passage of Lines				X
4303	Breach Obstacles (refer to Cbt Tm BTS)				X
4304	Bypass				X
4305	Consolidate				X
4306	Infiltrate				X
4307	Link-up				X
4308	Move Tactically				X
4309	Occupy Assembly Area / Harbour / Hide				X
4310	Conduct a Convoy Escort				X
4311	Relief in Place				X
4312	Withdrawal				X
4313	Break Contact				X
4315	Establish a Traffic Control Post				X
4316	Conduct Road Movement				X
4321	Support an Assault Boat Crossing				X

BTS	TASK	OFF	DEF	DELAY	TRANS
4322	Breach Minefield Manually				X
4323	Construct an Elevated Cable System				X
4324	Construct a Combat Road				X
4325	Construct a Snow / Ice Road and / or an Ice Bridge				X
4326	Construct a Helicopter Landing Site				X
14371	Pioneer Section Constructs Improvised Water Crossing Devices				X
	PROTECTION				
5001	Cross a Contaminated Area	X	X	X	X
5002	Decontaminate	X	X	X	X
5003	Conduct NBC Survey	X	X	X	X
5004	Defend Against Air Attack	X	X	X	X
5005	React to Contact / Direct Fire / Indirect Fire	X	X	X	X
5006	React to Ambush	X	X	X	X
5007	Self-Extraction from Scatterable Mines (refer to Cbt Tm BTS)	X	X	X	X
5008	Deny Equipment and Supplies	X	X	X	X
5009	Establish a Roadblock / Checkpoint	X	X	X	X
5011	Construct a Wire Obstacle	X	X	X	X
5013	Lay / Lift a Protective Minefield	X	X	X	X
5014	Lay a Nuisance Minefield	X	X	X	X
5015	Execute a Crater Obstacle	X	X	X	X
5016	Construct an Abatis	X	X	X	X

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

BTS	TASK	OFF	DEF	DELAY	TRANS
5017	Fire a Prepared Demolition	X	X	X	X
5018	Set Booby Traps	X	X	X	X
5019	Clear Booby Traps	X	X	X	X
5020	Prepare a Site for FIBUA	X	X	X	X
5021	Construct a Shelter	X	X	X	X
5201	Pioneer Platoon Provides Explosive Assistance to Digging	X	X	X	X
	SUSTAINMENT				
6001	Coordinate Integral CSS	X	X	X	X
6002	Conduct Personnel Administration	X	X	X	X
6003	Treat and Evacuate Casualties	X	X	X	X
6004	Handle PWs / Detainees	X	X	X	X
6005	Provide Integral Transportation Services	X	X	X	X
6006	Conduct Delivery Point Operations	X	X	X	X
6007	Provide Integral Maintenance Services	X	X	X	X
6008	Respond to a Repair / Recovery Request	X	X	X	X
6009	Provide Integral Supply Services	X	X	X	X
6010	Provide Food Services	X	X	X	X
6011	Conduct Running / Battle Resupply	X	X	X	X
6021	Construct a Non-Standard Bridge	X	X	X	X

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
FOREWORD	i
COMMENTS / SUGGESTIONS.....	iii
INTRODUCTION	v
INFANTRY TASKS LINKED TO COMBAT FUNCTIONS AND OPERATIONS / PHASES OF WAR	ix
COMMAND.....	1
1001 B/C/D - BATTLE PROCEDURE.....	1
1002 D/F - ESTABLISH AND OPERATE A COMMAND POST	8
FIREPOWER.....	14
2001 D - EMPLOY INDIRECT FIRE SUPPORT	14
2002 B/C/D - ENGAGE TARGETS WITH MAIN AND SECONDARY ARMAMENT.....	16
12701 C - PROCESS CALL FOR FIRE	19
12702 C - FIRES A FINAL PROTECTIVE FIRE.....	23
12703 C - FIRE SIMULTANEOUS MISSIONS	25
12704 C - OPERATES A FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION CENTRE	28
12705 C - OCCUPIES A BASEPLATE POSITION.....	31
INFORMATION OPERATIONS.....	35
3001 B/C/D - MAINTAIN OPERATIONS SECURITY.....	35
3002 C/D - SCREEN	39
3003 B - ESTABLISH AND OPERATE AN OBSERVATION POST.....	42
3004 B - CONDUCT A DISMOUNTED RECONNAISSANCE PATROL	45
3005 C - CONDUCT AREA RECONNAISSANCE.....	50

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

3006 C - CONDUCT ROUTE / POINT RECONNAISSANCE.....	54
3007 F - CONDUCT INTELLIGENCE OPERATIONS.....	58
3011 B - CONDUCT ENGINEER / PIONEER RECONNAISSANCE.....	61
3012 B - RECONNOITRE A DEMOLITION TARGET	65
3013 B - RECONNOITRE A GAP CROSSING SITE.....	67
3014 B - RECONNOITRE AN ENEMY MINEFIELD	69
I3701 C - CONDUCTS SCREEN AND FLANK SECURITY	73
I3702 C - CONDUCT A LAY BACK PATROL.....	77
MANOEUVRE	81
OFFENSIVE OPERATIONS	81
4001 B/C - ATTACK.....	81
4001 D - ATTACK	84
4002 B/C - ESTABLISH A FIRE BASE.....	87
4003 C/D - BREAKOUT.....	90
4004 C/D - RAID.....	93
4005 C - FIGHT IN A BUILT-UP AREA (FIBUA)	99
4005 D - FIGHT IN A BUILT-UP AREA (FIBUA).....	104
4006 C - WOODS CLEARING.....	109
4007 C/D - AMBUSH.....	116
4011 C - SUPPORT AN ATTACK ON A FORTIFIED POSITION	124
I4071 C - CLEAR TRENCH SYSTEM.....	129
I4072 C - CLEAR BUNKER.....	134
I4073 C/D - CONDUCT AIRMOBLIE OPERATIONS	139
I4074 B - CONDUCT SNIPER MISSION	145
DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS	149
4101 B/C/D - DEFEND	149

4102 C/D - GUARD A RESERVED DEMOLITION	156
4103 C - DEFEND IN A BUILT-UP AREA	161
4103 D - DEFEND IN A BUILT-UP AREA	167
DELAY	174
4201 C/D - DELAY	174
4202 C/D - GUARD	178
TRANSITIONAL OPERATIONS	181
4301 B/C/D - ADVANCE TO CONTACT	181
4302 C/D - PASSAGE OF LINES	183
4304 D - BYPASS	190
4305 C/D - CONSOLIDATE	192
4306 C/D - INFILTRATE	196
4307 C - LINK-UP	200
4308 B/C/D - MOVE TACTICALLY	204
4309 C/D - OCCUPY ASSEMBLY AREA / HARBOUR / HIDE	211
4310 C/D - CONDUCT A CONVOY ESCORT	219
4311 C/D - RELIEF IN PLACE	224
4312 C/D - WITHDRAWAL	228
4313 B/C - BREAK CONTACT	232
4315 B - ESTABLISH A TRAFFIC CONTROL POST	235
4316 D/F - CONDUCT ROAD MOVEMENT	238
4321 C - SUPPORT AN ASSAULT BOAT CROSSING	245
4322 C - BREACH MINEFIELD MANUALLY	248
4323 C - CONTRUCT AN ELEVATED CABLE SYSTEM	254
4324 C - CONSTRUCT A COMBAT ROAD	256
4325 C - CONSTRUCT A SNOW/ICE ROAD AND / OR AN ICE BRIDGE	260

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

4326 B/C - CONSTRUCT A HELICOPTER LANDING SITE	268
14371 B - CONSTRUCTS IMPROVISED WATER CROSSING DEVICES	271
PROTECTION	272
5001 D - CROSS A CONTAMINATED AREA	272
5002 B/C/D - DECONTAMINATE	275
5003 B - CONDUCT NBC SURVEY	
5004 B/C - DEFEND AGAINST AIR ATTACK	282
5005 B/C - REACT TO CONTACT / DIRECT FIRE / INDIRECT FIRE	286
5006 B/C - REACT TO AMBUSH	291
5008 C/D - DENY EQUIPMENT AND SUPPLIES	294
5009 B/C/D - ESTABLISH A ROADBLOCK / CHECKPOINT	297
5011 B/C - CONSTRUCT A WIRE OBSTACLE	302
5013 B/C - LAY / LIFT A PROTECTIVE MINEFIELD	306
5014 B - LAY A NUISANCE MINEFIELD	313
5015 B - EXECUTE A CRATER OBSTACLE	317
5016 B - CONSTRUCT AN ABATIS	322
5017 B - FIRE A PREPARED DEMOLITION	327
5018 B - SET BOOBY TRAPS	329
5019 B - CLEAR BOOBY TRAPS	332
5020 B/C - PREPARE A SITE FOR FIBUA	338
5021 B/C - CONSTRUCT A SHELTER	343
5201 B - PROVIDES EXPLOSIVE ASSISTANCE TO DIGGING	348
SUSTAINMENT	350
6001 D - COORDINATE INTEGRAL COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT	350

6002 B - CONDUCT PERSONNEL ADMINISTRATION..... 352

6003 B/C/D - TREAT AND EVACUATE CASUALTIES..... 356

6004 D - HANDLE PRISONERS OF WAR (PW) /
DETAINEES 359

6005 C - PROVIDE INTEGRAL TRANSPORTATION
SERVICES..... 363

6006 D - CONDUCT DELIVERY POINT (DP)
OPERATIONS..... 365

6007 C - PROVIDE INTEGRAL MAINTENANCE
SERVICES..... 368

6008 B - RESPOND TO A REPAIR / RECOVERY
REQUEST 371

6009 C - PROVIDE INTEGRAL SUPPLY SERVICES..... 375

6010 C - PROVIDE FOOD SERVICES..... 377

6011 C/D - CONDUCT RUNNING / BATTLE RESUPPLY 379

6021 B/C - CONSTRUCT A NON-STANDARD
BRIDGE (NSB) 381

COMMAND**1001 B/C/D - BATTLE PROCEDURE****ELEMENT: SECT / PL / COY****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The element is conducting tactical operations. A new mission is received requiring the element to prepare a warning order and orders. Offensive, defensive, delay or transitional operations by day or night under NBC conditions may be involved. Civilians, government organizations, non-government organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the press could be present in the area of operations. Depending on the nature and complexity of the mission, and the time available, some steps may be abbreviated.

TASK STANDARD:

The element commander develops a plan which follows the higher commander's intent, makes maximum effective use of time, is issued to subordinate commanders using less than one third the time available, is clearly understood by subordinate commanders and accomplishes the assigned mission.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. Elements of battle procedure, which must be achieved: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. use of standard groups: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) orders group (2) reconnaissance group b. reconnaissance party c. concurrent activity at all levels. 			
2. If the fast pace of combat precludes the conduct of			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>a full estimate, the element commander should conduct a combat estimate, or immediately react to the situation:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. mission analysis - clarify the higher commander's intent and tasks assigned b. ground - consider each approach, left, centre and right using COPPED: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Cover (2) Obstacles (3) Positions for fire (4) Positions for observation (5) Enemy (6) Distance c. plan - simple, bold, aggressive d. orders: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) standard sequence, or (2) battle orders: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) platoon - terrain, enemy, mission, execution (b) section - group, enemy, task, move order. <p>3. If time permits, the following detailed steps for battle procedure are followed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. (Step 1) The commander receives a warning order 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>b. (Step 2) Upon receipt of a warning order, the commander conducts a quick map study and time estimate</p> <p>c. (Step 3) The commander receives orders from the higher commander:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) seeks clarification as required (2) coordinates with staff <p>d. (Step 4) The commander conducts a mission analysis:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) identifies the higher (two-up) commanders' intent and immediate superior's concept of operations (2) identifies assigned and implied tasks (3) identifies limitations which may relate to: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) time (b) space (c) resources (d) the way the mission will be executed (e) political restrictions (if applicable) (f) if applicable, the open fire policy and / or rules of engagement (ROE) (4) continuously determines if the situation has changed sufficiently to 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>warrant a review of the estimate</p> <p>(5) identifies essential tasks and produces a restated mission</p> <p>(6) (Step 5) The commander issues the initial warning order immediately or as soon as possible, stating as a minimum:</p> <p>(7) the probable task</p> <p>(8) the location and time for orders</p> <p>(9) the degree of warning or earliest time of movement of the main body (eg. no move before...)</p> <p>(10) any restrictions on reconnaissance</p> <p>(11) any special administrative instructions affecting the resting or feeding of troops, regrouping, issue of ammunition, need for special equipment, moves to assembly areas, etc</p> <p>(12) ack</p> <p>e. (Step 6) The commander makes a detailed time estimate, leaving two thirds of the available time for subordinates to conduct their own battle procedure</p> <p>f. (Step 7) The commander conducts a map study and prepares an outline plan</p> <p>g. (Step 8) The commander prepares a reconnaissance plan:</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) identifies questions to be answered at each location and en route (2) views the ground from the enemy's perspective, security permitting (3) considers: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) the threat (b) time available (c) number of locations to be visited (d) routes available (e) necessity for a protection party h. (Step 9) The reconnaissance party conducts the reconnaissance IAW the plan, but adjustments may be made as necessary i. (Step 10) The commander completes the remainder of the estimate j. (Step 11) The commander issues a supplementary warning order, confirming information in the initial warning order and adding new information as necessary k. (Step 12) The commander completes the plan, and prepares and issues orders: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) issues orders at the time stated in the warning order (2) ensures orders are given at a location that reduces travel time and if possible allows observation of the 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>zone/sector and promotes OPSEC</p> <p>(3) enhances presentation of orders through the use of visual aids, time permitting (eg. terrain models, diagrams, etc)</p> <p>(4) ensures key personnel attend O Gp and are seated logically</p> <p>(5) introduces newly attached commanders</p> <p>(6) uses the proper format for orders</p> <p>(7) christens the ground</p> <p>(8) if the orders are complex, holds a short talk-through of the task execution at the start of the orders ‘execution’ paragraph (Concept of Operations)</p> <p>(9) identifies the higher commander’s intent</p> <p>(10) clearly states element’s mission and tasks of subordinates IAW mission analysis</p> <p>(11) ensures there is no repetition of instructions unless it is vital to clarify a task</p> <p>(12) confirms subordinate commanders understand their instructions</p> <p>(13) issues all supporting documentation necessary to coordinate the task</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>(14) ensures subordinate commanders perform lateral coordination before leaving</p> <p>l. (Step 13) The commander coordinates the activities and requirements of subordinates, including rehearsals if time and situation permit</p> <p>m. (Step 14) The commander supervises the deployment, taking appropriate and timely action to rectify any problems</p> <p>n. (Step 15) Mission is executed IAW orders.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

1002 D/F - ESTABLISH AND OPERATE A COMMAND POST

ELEMENT: COY / BN

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

This task includes all elements within a company / battalion HQ. To be properly exercised, the CP and HQ personnel must be present, and the CP should be deployed as part of an FTX. This task is performed day and night in all weather conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The CP is established, and re-established following each move, taking into account all siting and security factors. The CP facilitates the effective control of unit and subunit operations through the maintenance of continuous voice and data communications with required internal and external elements, and the maintenance of all orders, maps, messages, and other supporting documentation / records.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The CP is sited taking into consideration the following factors: a. site selected permits good communications with higher headquarters and subordinate elements, without need for an RRB station and CP is screened from enemy EW devices b. CP is concealed, making best use of wooded areas and villages. Isolated or predictable cover is avoided c. physical protection, particularly from artillery, is provided d. security/defence of the CP is provided, either by integral HQ personnel or by co-			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>location with another element of the unit</p> <p>e. site is accessible by wheeled vehicles, preferably with a covered final approach.</p> <p>2. When suitable and / or available, a mobile CP complex is quickly deployed, providing a work area for the commander and the various staff cells in the HQ.</p> <p>3. Communications configuration is established and provided for the CP complex, meeting all operational and technical requirements, including a remote capability when available.</p> <p>4. CP establishes and maintains communication:</p> <p>a. upon initial deployment, CP establishes communication on appropriate radio nets and completes all communications checks</p> <p>b. communications are maintained with all subordinate elements and higher HQ stations without interruption</p> <p>c. only approved radio telephone procedures are used</p> <p>d. CP encodes all critical messages without error</p> <p>e. CP decodes all messages without error</p> <p>f. CP keeps transmissions to 15 seconds or less</p> <p>g. CP uses challenge and reply authentication IAW SOP without error</p> <p>h. electronic silence is observed as directed in orders</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards		Eff	NPrac	Ineff
i.	radio silence is observed as directed in orders			
j.	lowest possible power settings and directional antennas are used when possible			
k.	CP continues to communicate while the enemy attempts to jam communications			
l.	MIJI reports are submitted within 5 minutes after attempted jamming.			
5.	CP security is established and maintained:			
a.	during HQ moves, the reconnaissance party is in place before the main body with CP arrives			
b.	all-round protection is provided			
c.	communications are continuously maintained with higher and subordinate HQ to provide early warning of enemy contacts in the immediate vicinity			
d.	security measures are upgraded, such as placement of concertina around the CP complex and installation of early warning devices			
e.	generators and vehicle engines are turned off during alarms			
f.	Duty Officer (DO) gathers all classified documents and is prepared to destroy them if in danger of capture			
g.	CP interior lights go red at night.			
6.	The CP always has a DO present who:			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. understands the current battle situation and the current passwords, critical code words and nicknames b. knows the location of all HQ officers. <p>7. The CP has a minimum of one communications qualified individual who:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. with the DO, mans the nets and logs all traffic b. keeps all COMSEC material current c. immediately diagnoses and corrects any technical fault d. provides technical maintenance e. provides electrical power distribution. <p>8. Orders and instructions are available for consultation:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. unit SOPs b. formation SOPs (Bn only) c. CEOIs d. higher headquarters and own orders. <p>9. The CP maintains currency of the following information, as applicable:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. order of battle and location state b. officer location board c. DO roster 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. SDS schedule, if applicable e. radio diagrams and address groups f. code word and nickname lists g. passwords h. CP files including own operations log, higher operations log, in and out messages, and INTREPs/INTSUMs, as applicable i. critical equipment states j. administrative reports and returns k. ack register (Bn CP) l. defence diagram for the CP area m. master Battle Map in the CP vehicle, and Information and briefing map in working area of the CP, complete with applicable overlays (Bn CP). <p>10. Outgoing DO briefs the incoming DO properly and ensures that the current situation is understood to the satisfaction of both.</p> <p>11. Step-up procedures are employed to maintain communications during the move of the CP:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. moves are anticipated, general locations selected, and new sites are reconnoitred b. the step-up CP receives a copy of the most recent orders, etc c. the step-up CP is manned and equipped to operate alone for a prolonged period 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards		Eff	NPrac	Ineff
d.	the CP continues to operate until the step-up is in location and has established communications			
e.	the step-up CP assumes control through use of appropriate code words and voice procedure			
f.	moves are made quickly, in order to permit the HQ to re-group as soon as possible.			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

FIREPOWER

2001 D - EMPLOY INDIRECT FIRE SUPPORT

ELEMENT: COMPANY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The company is operating as part of a larger unit. Both enemy and friendly forces have indirect fire and close air support (CAS) available.

TASK STANDARD:

The company commander, FOO (if available) and fire controller (FC) plan and execute indirect fire that supports the higher commander's plan, and covers likely enemy approaches and key terrain. Friendly fire does not cause friendly casualties.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The company commander, FOO, and FC make a tentative fire support plan: a. develop a fire support plan in concert with the higher commander's plans, guidance and intent in all operations b. integrate the FOO and FC to ensure they are in position to execute tasks c. augment the fire of the higher HQ's fire support plan IAW the higher HQ commander's guidance to ensure indirect fire is planned in depth, including the illumination plan for all ranges and weapons d. consider deception plan e. establish recorded targets on likely enemy			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>approaches</p> <p>f. submit proposed fire plan to higher for approval.</p> <p>2. Receive approved fire plan and distribute.</p> <p>3. Execute fire support plan:</p> <p>a. all available supporting direct and indirect fire is synchronized and executed in a timely manner, and accomplishes the desired result IAW the fire plan, or the commander's requests</p> <p>b. fire support priorities are adjusted as the battle progresses.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

2002 B/C/D - ENGAGE TARGETS WITH MAIN AND SECONDARY ARMAMENT

ELEMENT: SECT / PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The element is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The element commander plans and coordinates direct fire. Main and secondary armament must be used to engage static and moving targets while stationary and on the move, under all types of visibility and environmental conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The element engages targets IAW the assigned mission. Weapon crews must effectively boresight, zero, and complete misfire drills on main armament, coaxial machine guns, and on ground mounted weapon systems. The element must successfully achieve engagement time and accuracy standards for predeployment and for minimum level of capability (MLOC) standards defined in applicable weapons manuals.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. Element commander develops a direct fire plan: a. coordinated with higher HQ b. integrated with flanking units c. planned in depth for all ranges and weapons d. establish recorded targets on likely enemy approaches. 2. Element commander informs subordinate commanders of the direct fire plan. 3. The element executes the direct fire plan:			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>a. all available direct fire is synchronized to achieve the desired result:</p> <p>(1) elements occupy firing positions no later than the time specified in orders which:</p> <p>(a) provide mutual support</p> <p>(b) are not easily identified by map reconnaissance</p> <p>(c) are covered and concealed from ground and air observation</p> <p>(d) have covered and concealed routes in and out</p> <p>(e) provide enfilade fire from defilade positions</p> <p>(f) allow applicable stand-off ranges</p> <p>(g) are clear of obstructions along the line of sight</p> <p>(h) have alternate and secondary positions sited, if possible</p> <p>(2) target priorities are adjusted as the battle progresses</p> <p>b. fire and shift fire as required until:</p> <p>(1) ordered to cease the attack, or</p> <p>(2) the enemy withdraws out of range, or</p> <p>(3) the enemy is destroyed or</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p style="text-align: center;">suppressed.</p> <p>4. Crews effectively boresight and zero:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. main armament b. coaxial machine gun c. ground mounted weapon systems. <p>5. Crews effectively complete misfire drills:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. main armament b. coaxial machine gun c. ground mounted weapon systems. <p>6. Crews successfully achieve the engagement time and accuracy standards IAW applicable weapon manuals:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. predeployment standard b. MLOC standard. 			

I2701 C - PROCESS CALL FOR FIRE**ELEMENT: MOR PL****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The mortar platoon groups have moved to new firing positions. The fire controller (FC) with a manoeuvre subunit receives a call for fire from the subunit and calls for fire from the assigned mortar group. The group control post operator (CPO) initiates the fire. The battalion fire support coordination centre (FSCC) monitors all calls for fire, including artillery and air, and controls movement of mortar platoon.

TASK STANDARD:

Within two minutes of the call for fire, the FC determines the initial data and relays the request to the assigned mortar group CPO to fire. Subsequent fire commands are issued within 30 seconds after receipt of corrections.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The FC records the call for fire and repeats the call for fire. 2. The FC moves to a position of observation to assume the call for fire from the subunit, if possible. 3. The FSCC determines if the mortar group can accept the fire mission by verifying that: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. the target is in the unit's area of responsibility b. the target does not endanger friendly forces c. the fire request supports the overall mission of the supported unit(s) d. the required ammunition is available and 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>does not violate commander's guidance</p> <p>e. the target does not conflict with any fire support coordination measures</p> <p>f. if other fire units are available to engage in the mission if required for the target.</p> <p>4. The FC issues the order to fire:</p> <p>a. determines initial firing data, including target description, and sends it to the mortar group CPO within two minutes of the last element of the call for fire</p> <p>b. determines subsequent corrections within 30 seconds</p> <p>c. all firing data is recorded</p> <p>d. data sheet is updated</p> <p>e. firing data of the FC is confirmed by the CPO:</p> <p>(1) deflection</p> <p>(2) range</p> <p>(3) charge</p> <p>(4) time.</p> <p>5. The CPO announces the initial fire command to the mortar line, including all elements necessary for accomplishing the fire mission. The warning order is to include:</p> <p>a. the size of the fire unit - group or section</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>b. ammunition and fuse:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) HE (2) smoke (3) illumination (4) fuse delay (5) fuse SQ (6) fuse time <p>c. charge</p> <p>d. bearing</p> <p>e. elevation</p> <p>f. command to fire.</p> <p>6. The mortar line / group / repeats the fire command and applies the correct data on the mortars.</p> <p>7. Subsequent fire orders originate with the FC and are converted by the CPO. They are the parts of the orders that have changed from the initial order given, to correct rounds onto the target and produce effective fire:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. bearing b. elevation c. command to fire. <p>8. Mortar group / section fires the rounds:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. when the rounds are fired, the CPO announces to the FC 'Shot, over' b. CPO announces the time of flight of the 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>rounds</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. the FC determines the number and type for rounds fired in the initial call for fire d. the CPO repeats para 5 for all subsequent commands until the FC, announces 'End of Mission' e. the CPO records the results of the fire mission, and completes the ammunition portion of the report. <p>9. The FSCC:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. records the call for fire and passes the target description to higher HQ b. passes target results to higher HQ. 			

I2702 C - FIRES A FINAL PROTECTIVE FIRE**ELEMENT: MOR PL****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

While in a firing position, the mortar platoon receives a request to fire a final protective fire (FPF) already adjusted. One mortar group fires on a subunit FPF, or the mortar platoon fires on a battalion / battle group FPF.

TASK STANDARD:

The mortar platoon initiates accurate FPF within 30 seconds if already laid, or within one minute if not already laid on FPF.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>1. A Forward Observation Officer (FOO) or Fire Controller (FC) initiates a FPF call for fire. The call may be relayed through the Fire Support Coordination Centre (FSCC) if FOO initiates, or through a Control Post Operator (CPO) if FC initiates:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. FOO / FC authenticate if code word not used</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. FSCC / CPO transmit designated code word to mortar platoon / group.</p> <p>2. The mortar platoon / group fires FPF:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. if already laid on FPF:</p> <p style="padding-left: 80px;">(1) perform drills to fire as ordered</p> <p style="padding-left: 80px;">(2) fires within 30 seconds after receipt of FPF request</p> <p style="padding-left: 80px;">(3) continue firing as prescribed by FOO / FC, or until unit commander, FOO,</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p style="text-align: center;">or FC calls ‘End of Mission’</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. if not already laid on FPF: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) perform drill to lay bearing and elevation change (2) perform drills to fire as ordered (3) fires within one minute after receipt of FPF request c. all rounds impact on FPF d. at the end of the mission, the CPO reports the number of rounds expended and the FC reports effects of fire on the target to the CPO. <p>3. The FSCC monitors all above.</p>			

I2703 C - FIRE SIMULTANEOUS MISSIONS**ELEMENT: MOR PL****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

In a firing mission, the mortar platoon receives two adjust-fire requests, one immediately after the other. Note that mortar platoon could engage one target from two different group locations.

TASK STANDARD:

The mortar platoon engages both targets with accurate fire for effect (FFE). The platoon engages the enemy or target within the bursting radius for an effective FFE.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>1. The Fire Support Coordination Centre (FSCC) coordinates the allocation of two missions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the Fire Controllers (FC) with the subunits requesting for fire must determine the call for fire and send it to their mortar group Control Post Operator (CPO) as soon as possible after the last element of the call for fire from the subunit b. the FCs must determine subsequent corrections within 30 seconds c. CPOs must record call for fire, or d. the CPO must determine the direction and distance from the firing position to the target, and prepares the initial fire command following the procedures listed at para 2 below. The fire request is authenticated if code word not used e. the FSCC determines if the group could 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>accept the fire mission by verifying that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) the target is in the mortar platoon’s area of responsibility (2) the target does not endanger friendly forces (3) the fire mission supports the overall mission of the manoeuvre element(s) (4) the required ammunition is available (5) the target does not conflict with any fire support coordination measures <p>f. mortars firing on different targets do not crossfire (peacetime).</p> <p>2. Each group adjusts fire onto its target:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. performs drills to lay mortars for bearing and elevation change b. perform drills to fire as ordered c. groups fire initial adjusting rounds for each mission d. non-adjusting mortars follow the fire commands for the adjusting mortar with which it will fire the FFE. <p>3. The mortar groups engage the two targets with FFE:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. perform drills to fire as ordered b. initiates FFE for both missions as soon as possible 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>c. engage the enemy or targets IAW the fire plan</p> <p>d. at the end of the mission, the CPOs report the number of rounds expended, and the FCs reports the number of rounds on the target, if known</p> <p>e. when not firing another fire mission, mortar platoon lays mortars using final protective fire (FPF) data, or designated target data.</p> <p>4. The mortar groups prepare for the next fire mission.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

12704 C - OPERATES A FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION CENTRE

ELEMENT: MOR PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The FSCC coordinates the application of all indirect fire support to the battalion, and controls the mortar platoon's indirect fire in support of the battalion during a combat operation. Enemy forces have been operating in the area and conducting harassing missions against friendly manoeuvre elements.

TASK STANDARD:

The FSCC maintains communications with supported manoeuvre units. It coordinates indirect fire, including air, aviation and naval gunfire, within or allotted in support of the battle group. It coordinates and monitors the execution of requests for fire, fire missions with adjacent units, and the production of a fully coordinated fire plan. The FSCC balances the deployment, movement and employment of allotted fire resources with the battle group, and coordinates the resupply of allotted fire resources.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The FSCC maintains communications: a. monitors battalion net, mortar fire direction net and mortar platoon net b. functions as the net control station for the battalion mortar fire direction net c. maintains continuous communications with battalion command net, mortar fire net, artillery regimental net, artillery battery net, naval gunfire net, air request net, and tactical air direction net.			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>2. The FSCC controls the mortar platoon's indirect fire:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. monitor calls for fire IAW BTS I2701, 'Mortar Platoon Process Call for Fire' b. prepare and maintain target lists, target overlays, and schedules of fire c. maintains battle maps to include the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) friendly unit locations (2) targets (within 100m accuracy) (3) fire support coordination measures (4) friendly unit control measures d. prepare and maintain maps for current and planned baseplate positions e. fire unit availability board f. maintains MFDC g. maintain ammunition log. <p>3. The mortar platoon commander supervises and ensures the efficient functioning of the FSCC:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. controls FSCC personnel b. supervises all fire missions c. verifies fire discipline d. conducts shift pairing e. supervises the FSCC sleep plan to ensure 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>24 hour operation</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> f. ensures FSCC personnel use proper communications procedures g. ensures FSCC personnel understand their role in defending battle group HQ h. consolidates and passes information i. exchanges information with TAC CP and intelligence section. <p>4. The FSCC is prepared at all times to coordinate calls for fire.</p>			

12705 C - OCCUPIES A BASEPLATE POSITION**ELEMENT: MOR PL****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The mortar platoon receives an order to occupy a baseplate position. The platoon may prepare a position using an advance party, or not, before occupation. Latest INTSUMs reveal a platoon-sized enemy element withdrawing to establish defensive positions. The enemy is at 65 to 70 percent strength.

TASK STANDARD:

The baseplate position is in a location that provides good cover and concealment, and away from human habitation. It is away from known or suspected enemy locations and natural lines of drift. There are multiple withdrawal routes and is on solid ground. There is overhead clearance. The mortar platoon is prepared to provide indirect fire support to the manoeuvre element within two minutes of moving into a baseplate position. The platoon moves all personnel and equipment into their assigned positions not later than the time specified in the orders. The mortar platoon lays all mortars and sets aiming posts within prescribed time limits.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The mortar platoon commander plans for a mortar baseplate position: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. selects a tentative baseplate position based on platoon 2IC's reconnaissance or map reconnaissance b. selects an alternate baseplate position based on platoon 2IC's reconnaissance or map reconnaissance. 2. The platoon 2IC:			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>a. confirms baseplate position is suitable by coordinating with FCs, conducting the reconnaissance, or ordering group commanders to conduct the reconnaissance</p> <p>b. if the platoon 2IC conducts the reconnaissance, he will confirm orders, complete the map reconnaissance, and issue a movement order, para 3 to group commanders (if required), or para 4 to CPOs (if required), check communications, and depart</p> <p>c. enroute:</p> <p>(1) informs the FSCC and mortar groups of any obstacles and routes around them</p> <p>(2) informs the FSCC and mortar groups of any other suitable baseplate positions</p> <p>(3) confirms the suitability of RVs</p> <p>d. at the baseplate position, ensures that it is suitable and accessible</p> <p>e. issues a movement order para 3 to group commanders, if not already done</p> <p>f. meets each group commander at the respective RV and leads them to the baseplate position</p> <p>g. reconnoitres alternate baseplate positions</p> <p>h. upgrades the survey to each baseplate position, if required.</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>3. The group commanders survey to ordered state, reconnoitre to ordered degree, and conduct a quick clearance of their assigned positions.</p> <p>4. The mortar groups move into their baseplate position:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. group commanders designate mortar positions, group centre, aiming points, and CP location b. establish an A echelon area for vehicles not required at the baseplate, main area, ammo point, or kitchen c. complete route improvement if required, and prepares for alternate positions, night firing, and digging if ordered d. each mortarman orients the mortar, mounted or dismounted, in the designated direction of fire e. maintain interval between mortars IAW SOPs f. perform drill to place mortars into action g. the group commander's vehicle is placed near the centre of the position to allow the group commander to announce fire commands if necessary. <p>5. The mortar groups establishes local security:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. all-round security b. OPs with lead subunits are sited to observe likely enemy avenues of approach, and to provide early warning to protect the 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>manoeuvre element's main body from surprise</p> <p>c. defensive positions orient on likely enemy avenues of approach.</p> <p>6. The mortar groups lay mortars:</p> <p>a. aiming circle is correctly mounted, leveled, and oriented</p> <p>b. groups performs drill to orient mortars with aiming circle, or compass</p> <p>7. CPO prepares to receive calls for fire.</p> <p>8. Each mortar detachment obtains an auxiliary aiming point for its mortar:</p> <p>a. auxiliary aiming point is chosen</p> <p>b. mortarman obtains the record to the auxiliary aiming point</p> <p>c. record to the auxiliary aiming point is recorded.</p> <p>9. The mortar groups upgrade baseplate positions to the ordered stage of occupation.</p> <p>10. The platoon commander and FSCC prepare to receive fire missions.</p>			

INFORMATION OPERATIONS

3001 B/C/D - MAINTAIN OPERATIONS SECURITY

ELEMENT: SECT / PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The element is ordered to execute a mission as part of a larger force. The enemy has the ability to detect the troop visually and electronically.

TASK STANDARD:

The element prevents the enemy from learning its strength, disposition and intentions.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. Element commanders continually carry out or check security measures: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. control information on a need to know basis b. prohibit fraternization with civilians, as applicable c. limits access to the unit area d. conduct deployment preparations so as to minimize detection e. make sure maps contain minimal details on friendly units f. conduct inspection and briefings to ensure personnel do not carry details of military activities in personal belongings (eg. letters, diaries, photographs, etc) g. sanitize all planning areas and positions 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>before departure.</p> <p>2. The element maintains camouflage discipline:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. concealed vehicle positions and routes are selected b. track discipline is maintained c. vehicles and equipment are concealed using natural camouflage, hessian / reflective surface covers and camouflage nets d. vehicles and equipment are switched off whenever possible to minimize thermal and electro-magnetic signatures. Heat sources are kept under screening systems even when using natural concealment e. personal and vehicle loads are adjusted to minimize noise f. lights used for night work are kept to a minimum and are shielded as much as possible g. movement of individual personnel and vehicles when the element is stationary is kept to a minimum. <p>3. The element employs communications security procedures:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. CEOI procedures (authentication, code words, frequency changes, etc) are used and enforced b. short transmissions, lowest possible power settings and directional antennas are used 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>c. transmission patterns are avoided as much as possible</p> <p>d. radio silence is maintained as directed</p> <p>e. correct procedures for working through jamming are used</p> <p>f. runners and wire are used as much as possible</p> <p>g. visual signals are used IAW SOPs.</p> <p>4. The element maintains local security measures</p> <p>a. sentries are sited in a position to provide security while remaining undetected. Sentries are in possession of personal equipment, personal weapon or C6/C9, communications equipment, binoculars, Night Vision Goggles, and range card. Sentries know:</p> <p>(1) location of post and the positions of flanking posts</p> <p>(2) the route that they must take to and from the post</p> <p>(3) arcs of observation / fire</p> <p>(4) enemy situation</p> <p>(5) particulars of any friendly patrols or others troops in the area</p> <p>(6) challenging procedure</p> <p>(7) the password, the alternate password, and the code word to be used to</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>change to it</p> <p>(8) action on contact</p> <p>(9) open fire policy and rules of engagement (ROE)</p> <p>(10) details and positions of any mines, intruder alarms or aids such as trip flares</p> <p>(11) the location of immediate superior and how to contact the superior</p> <p>(12) time of changing sentries and details of the relief system.</p> <p>b. performs stand to drills</p> <p>c. emplaces early warning devices and command detonated mines, as required</p> <p>d. safeguards weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents</p> <p>e. makes maximum use of night observation devices.</p>			

3002 C/D - SCREEN**ELEMENT: PL / COY****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The platoon / company is operating to screen in front of, or on the flanks of a larger friendly force. The force may be moving or stationary. The enemy is attempting to gain intelligence about the friendly force and / or disrupt its operation. This BTS should be read in conjunction with BTS [4201](#), 'Delay,' and BTS [4202](#), 'Guard.'

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon / company accomplishes its mission IAW higher commander's intent. The platoon / company maintains contact with the enemy and does not become decisively engaged. The platoon / company maintains constant surveillance of avenues of approach, named areas of interest (NAI), and target areas of interest (TAI) IAW orders.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon commander coordinates with higher commander a plan for the screen to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. identification of enemy avenues of approach and possible objectives for enemy reconnaissance and infiltrating elements b. security forces to cover enemy approaches c. reaction forces and supporting fires to reinforce or assist screening forces d. control measures: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) sectors, areas, boundaries or NAI for subordinate elements (2) use of reconnaissance and mortar 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>elements</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (3) phase lines (4) en route RVs, linkup points, contact points, and checkpoints (5) passage points and infiltration lanes (6) routes (for patrols or to initial screen line), if needed (7) alternate positions, withdrawal routes and handover lines <p>e. engagement criteria:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) size of enemy unit (2) type of enemy unit (3) activity of enemy unit <p>2. The platoon occupies the initial screen line by the time specified in the order:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. all identified enemy approaches and NAI are covered b. communications are established and maintained c. the platoon detects all enemy forces entering the area and accurately reports them to higher HQ as soon as possible <p>3. The platoon reacts to the enemy's approach:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. enemy units are observed b. all enemy information is reported to higher 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>HQ as soon as possible</p> <p>c. subsequent action is taken IAW orders,</p> <p>4. The platoon moves to subsequent screen lines or NAI to maintain the screen:</p> <p>a. continuously</p> <p>b. adjusts deployment during limited visibility, whenever possible</p> <p>5. If the platoon becomes decisively engaged by the enemy, it takes subsequent action IAW orders or reports to higher HQ and acts as directed in order to disrupt, delay, or destroy the enemy within platoon capabilities with supporting fire IAW BTS 4201, 'Delay,' or BTS 4202, 'Guard.'</p> <p>6. The platoon commander controls the movement of the screen elements:</p> <p>a. elements move, on order, to successive screen positions</p> <p>b. uses radio orders and control measures to direct the moves</p> <p>c. elements report when they occupy the new screen line/OPs.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

3003 B - ESTABLISH AND OPERATE AN OBSERVATION POST

ELEMENT: SECTION

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section is conducting defensive or delaying operations and is required to observe several named areas of interest (NAIs), target areas of interest (TAIs), or decision points (DPs).

TASK STANDARD:

The section OP party is provided with all the information needed to conduct its task. A suitable OP location is selected which permits observation of the required area without being detected by the enemy. All enemy activity in the area is observed and reported accurately and immediately.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The OP party is briefed on its mission, including: a. area to be observed and guidance on what to look for b. the enemy threat c. friendly forces in the area, including other OPs and patrols d. routes through obstacles and friendly positions e. when the OP is to be occupied by and for how long f. communications, including frequencies, codewords, passwords and reporting schedules			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> g. close air support (CAS) and indirect fire support available, the means of requesting it and the open fire policy 			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> h. fire support coordination measures. 			
<p>2. Suitable OP locations are selected and occupied:</p>			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. a location is selected to provide the best possible view of the area to be observed while avoiding obvious terrain features as much as possible 			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. a covered approach to the OP is used 			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. cover from ground and air observation is considered 			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. maximum use is made of camouflage 			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. a work party is organized for the preparation of the OP 			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> f. the local defence plan of any nearby friendly elements is conformed to 			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> g. workable communications are confirmed 			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> h. the OP's location and area of observation are reported. 			
<p>3. The OP party observes its area:</p>			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. several points throughout the area are selected, and bearings and ranges are determined and recorded on a range / surveillance card to aid in indication of targets 			
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. tactical information is recorded and 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
reported c. natural camouflage, if used, is replaced during periods of reduced visibility d. targets are engaged with CAS and indirect fire IAW the open fire policy e. results of engagements are reported f. knowledge of the area is continuously improved and recorded.			

3004 B - CONDUCT A DISMOUNTED RECONNAISSANCE PATROL

ELEMENT: SECTION

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The patrol is required to conduct a reconnaissance mission. The patrol is operating separately and provides its own security. The patrol receives all PIR and other intelligence requirements specified in the order for its assigned task. Both friendly and enemy elements have indirect fire and close air support (CAS) capabilities.

TASK STANDARD:

The patrol reconnoitres without detection by the enemy. The patrol completes the reconnaissance and reports all information by the time specified in the order.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The patrol commander completes battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 , 'Battle Procedure,' to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. coordination with forward and adjacent units, and the higher commander or unit Intelligence Officer, concerning: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) forward lines for passage (2) friendly obstacles (3) friendly OPs/LPs (4) other friendly patrols in the area (5) fire support (6) passwords 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>b. observation post coordination:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) passwords (2) location (3) recent enemy and friendly activity. <p>2. The patrol commander plans and task organizes the patrol for reconnaissance:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. conducts preliminary reconnaissance: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) possible routes / distances (2) tentative RVs (3) obstacles (4) landmarks (5) OPs (6) dead ground (7) covered approaches (8) friendly ambush sites (9) likely enemy positions b. organizes the patrol into reconnaissance, security, and command elements for RVs and the objective c. defines patrol concept of operations d. states equipment required e. conducts rehearsals: 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) patrol formations and signals (2) routes (3) action drills: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) halts (b) RVs (c) objective RV (ORV) (d) on the objective (e) obstacles (f) enemy contact (g) if lost or separated (h) casualty handling (i) action on illumination or trip flares (j) action with PWs (k) passage of lines f. defines individual tasks g. coordinates fire plan if necessary h. checks equipment and conducts weapon test fires i. ensures that the patrol rests j. conducts final inspection. 3. En route to the objective: 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. conducts passage of lines b. ensures move is silent and controlled c. counts personnel after each halt or obstacle d. uses hand signals e. ensures navigation is accurate f. conducts security: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) listening halts (2) flanks, rear protected (3) good observation (4) action at halts (5) carriage of weapons g. adopts appropriate fieldcraft: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) individual camouflage (2) use of ground (3) stealth (4) formation to suit the ground. 			
<p>4. Action at objective:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. ORV and release point must be established b. patrol commander conducts final reconnaissance of the objective c. the objective should be covered by fire 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. escape routes are confirmed e. observation of the enemy must be successful, and reported to higher HQ when possible f. silent, secure withdrawal covered by fire if required. <p>5. On return to ORV:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. checks for casualties b. checks equipment c. disseminate information if circumstances permit d. departs ORV quickly e. calls for fire support on objective if required f. ensures move is silent and controlled g. maintains security h. follows proper challenging procedure. <p>6. Conducts passage of lines.</p> <p>7. The patrol commander debriefs the patrol members to confirm information gathered during the patrol.</p> <p>8. Information is passed to higher HQ in the format specified and no later than the time specified.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

3005 C - CONDUCT AREA RECONNAISSANCE

ELEMENT: PLATOON

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITION

The platoon has received orders to conduct an area reconnaissance to locate enemy forces and / or collect terrain information within a prescribed area. Enemy contact is possible or expected. Time is available to conduct the reconnaissance.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon moves to the area of responsibility as quickly as possible. It collects and reports information covering the dominant and key terrain, enemy forces within the area, and all other items of interest specified in orders. It reacts to enemy forces as appropriate and maintains sufficient combat power to continue the mission.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>1. Platoon commander completes battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 ‘Battle Procedure.’</p> <p>2. Platoon commences move to area of responsibility, which may include passage of lines, and using the formation and type of movement specified by the platoon commander and IAW BTS 4308, ‘Move Tactically’.</p> <p>3. Conducts reconnaissance of the area of responsibility and reports to the higher commander.</p> <p>4. Employs patrols to assist in tactical movement when any of the following apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. detailed reconnaissance is required, such as to observe a named area of interest (NAI), clear a checkpoint, or observe across intervisibility lines			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. enemy contact is expected or visual contact has been made c. vehicle movement through an area is restricted by terrain d. time is available e. security is the primary concern. <p>5. Makes maximum use of sensors, speculative fire (if authorized), available aviation resources to conduct surveillance of restricted terrain such as woods, built-up areas, and defiles.</p> <p>6. Platoon collects and reports terrain information as directed in orders:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. determines and reports trafficability of major routes b. determines cross-country trafficability of all terrain within the area/zone c. gathers intervisibility line information d. reconnoitres all terrain within the area / zone to the lateral boundaries e. locates suitable fording or crossing sites near all bridges within the area / zone f. locates and evaluates all bridges within the area / zone g. locates and evaluates all tunnels and underpasses within the area / zone h. locates minefields, obstacles, and built-up areas within the area / zone 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. determines the existence and extent of any NBC contamination within the area / zone IAW Cbt Tm BTS 5003, ‘Conduct NBC Survey’ j. locates bypasses around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas within the area/zone. <p>7. Platoon identifies and reports all enemy forces within the area / zone:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. identifies enemy elements, activities b. conducts actions on contact c. deploys and reports, seeking cover and concealment or executing appropriate battle drill d. collects and reports accurate information on enemy forces within the area or zone (as applicable). Information includes the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) enemy locations, including supporting units and weapons (2) enemy activities, strength and composition (3) possible avenues of approach for counter-reconnaissance forces or advance guard elements (4) if orders specify that the contact is to be picketed and manoeuvre elements are available, performs handover of contact. 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
8. Conducts coordination at contact points with adjacent units on the flanks as directed.			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

3006 C - CONDUCT ROUTE / POINT RECONNAISSANCE

ELEMENT: PLATOON

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITION

The platoon has received orders to conduct a route/point reconnaissance alone or as part of a larger level operation. Planning and preparation have been completed, and time is available to conduct the reconnaissance. Enemy contact is possible or expected. Note that this BTS includes both route and point reconnaissance since a route reconnaissance normally includes a number of points to be reconnoitred. Moreover, a route is not limited to roads and tracks.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon deploys. It reconnoitres all key / dominant terrain from which the enemy could influence the route. It identifies and reacts to enemy forces along the route and retains sufficient combat power to continue the mission. It reports critical route information as directed by the commander.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. Platoon commander completes battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 'Battle Procedure.'			
2. Platoon deploys and moves along the designated route: a. deploys into a position to observe the line of departure (LD) and beyond using the specified formation b. deploys using the appropriate type of movement, adjusting the type as required by the ground, tactical situation and required rate of advance.			
3. Platoon collects information about the route. Note: The platoon commander should receive specific			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>guidance from the higher commander on how much detail is required. This includes verifying which critical tasks support the commander's intent. At a minimum, the platoon should determine trafficability:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. from the start point (SP) of the primary route, the platoon commander sends higher HQ an initial route report: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) map accuracy (2) reports location of the SP using control measures (3) reports information that platoon can see from SP using control measures b. determines and reports trafficability of the route: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) identifies the type of ground along the route (2) for roads and tracks, identifies classification of the route, checking for height, width, and weight restrictions to determine the appropriate class (3) identifies seasonal limitations of the route (4) identifies rate of movement the route will support (5) identifies location and type of any critical points c. reconnoitres to the limit of the enemy's direct fire range and along terrain that dominates the route, to include all lateral 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>routes</p> <p>d. reconnoitres built-up areas along the route IAW orders</p> <p>e. locates and reports bypasses around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas</p> <p>f. inspects and classifies each bridge along route:</p> <p>(1) patrol establishes security around bridge</p> <p>(2) if no Engineer Recce Party is available, and / or IAW orders, the patrol inspects the bridge, looking for weather damage, structural damage, and / or possible enemy-set demolitions, and conducts a hasty classification of the bridge</p> <p>(3) platoon / patrol commander sends report to higher HQ</p> <p>g. locates and reports fords or crossing sites near all bridges on the route, as required</p> <p>h. inspects and reports overpasses, underpasses, and culverts along the route. Classification is conducted if Engineer Recce Party is not available and / or IAW orders</p> <p>i. reconnoitres all defiles along the route</p> <p>j. locates mines, obstacles, and barriers along the route</p> <p>k. identify alternate route(s).</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>4. Platoon identifies enemy forces that can influence the route:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. identifies enemy forces b. reacts as appropriate and initiates actions on contact c. determines enemy strength, composition, activities d. develops the situation and recommends a course of action to the commander e. retains sufficient combat power to continue the mission f. reports accurately. <p>5. On completion of mission, prepares and submits an accurate report IAW unit SOPs.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

3007 F - CONDUCT INTELLIGENCE OPERATIONS

ELEMENT: BATTALION

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The battalion is conducting combat operations. The threat is regimental size in battalion defensive operations and company size in battalion offensive operations.

TASK STANDARD:

All available information about enemy capabilities, terrain, and weather necessary to plan, coordinate, and perform combat operations is identified, reported, and used. The battalion obtains all Commander's Critical Information Requirements (CCIR) in the battalion sector. All brigade-directed intelligence acquisition tasks on the enemy, terrain, or weather are accurately collected and reported by the battalion.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The battalion commander, staff and subordinates identify intelligence requirements and plan intelligence operations: a. the Intelligence Officer (IO) prepares the intelligence estimate and situational and events templates b. the commander and staff determine information needed for the operation c. the IO develops a plan to collect / request needed intelligence d. subordinate elements plan patrolling / reconnaissance / surveillance to collect needed intelligence information			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>e. counter-reconnaissance is planned.</p> <p>2. The battalion performs reconnaissance / surveillance:</p> <p>a. the battalion locates enemy combat vehicle weapons systems, obstacles</p> <p>b. all company-size mounted avenues of approach and all dismounted avenues of approach are accurately identified and rated</p> <p>c. all observed enemy movements are identified and reported to the battalion HQ</p> <p>d. information needed to use terrain critical to the battalion scheme of manoeuvre (routes, avenues of approach, fire base positions, etc) is gathered by physical reconnaissance early enough to allow timely adjustment to plans.</p> <p>3. Intelligence information is disseminated:</p> <p>a. critical information / intelligence (needed to modify the plan) reaches the designated commanders, subordinate elements, and is passed to adjacent units</p> <p>b. critical and directed intelligence / information (PIR/IR and information relating to named areas of interest (NAI), decision points (DP), and target areas of interest (TAI) are reported as directed.</p> <p>4. The battalion performs counter-reconnaissance activities:</p> <p>a. helicopter support is requested and used to</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>locate enemy OPs</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. a covering force is forward and prepared to defeat enemy reconnaissance elements c. battalion OPs and patrols are sent and active d. the battalion destroys enemy reconnaissance elements during offensive and defensive operations. 			

**3011 B - CONDUCT ENGINEER / PIONEER
RECONNAISSANCE**

ELEMENT: PNR SECT

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The reconnaissance party commander receives orders to reconnoitre a pioneer task, or to determine the availability of pioneer resources. Orders include the reconnaissance information required, the time by which the reconnaissance information is due to the higher commander ordering the reconnaissance, and the format in which the information is to be provided (eg. oral briefing, reconnaissance / design proforma, or written reconnaissance report). Contact with the enemy during the reconnaissance is possible.

TASK STANDARD:

The reconnaissance party completes the reconnaissance, acquiring all of the required information, and submits / transmits the information in the appropriate format to the higher commander who ordered the reconnaissance no later than the time specified in orders. The reconnaissance party takes the appropriate security measures to minimize casualties during the reconnaissance and to deny the enemy knowledge of the reconnaissance party's intentions. The time required to complete this task is increased when conducting it under NBC conditions.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The reconnaissance party commander verifies the information to be acquired during the reconnaissance and seeks clarification as necessary.			
2. The reconnaissance party commander ensures that the required personnel (eg. by occupation, qualification, position) and stores / equipment are prepared.			
3. The reconnaissance party commander plans the			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>reconnaissance:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. performs mission analysis to confirm specified / implied tasks, constraints / limitations on reconnaissance (eg. daylight reconnaissance / routes), and the purpose of the reconnaissance (mission statement) b. performs a detailed time estimate, working backwards from the time that the reconnaissance report is due c. performs a detailed map / air photo study to determine what sites to reconnoitre (if more than one) and to identify suitable vantage points and routes d. plans security during the reconnaissance. Identifies any local protection available e. identifies any additional reconnaissance party personnel and stores / equipment required (eg. above and beyond those items already being prepared in para 2) f. prepares a list of questions to be answered, technical data to be acquired (as per proforma) and decisions to be taken during the reconnaissance g. establish priority for sites to be visited (if more than one), selects routes accordingly, and develops a detailed reconnaissance timetable. <p>4. The reconnaissance party commander issue orders to/briefs the reconnaissance party in detail including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. routes 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. timings c. security d. action on contact and direct / indirect fire e. reconnaissance objectives / information requirements f. individual reconnaissance party member tasks (eg. taking measurements) g. action in the event of casualties / problems (eg. chain of command and dissemination of information within the reconnaissance party). <p>5. The reconnaissance party conducts ‘action on’ rehearsals and rehearses any complex measurement taking, as required.</p> <p>6. The reconnaissance party conducts the reconnaissance:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. maintains tactical posture b. maintains sense of urgency c. takes appropriate security measures. Coordinates with manoeuvre elements providing local security, if available d. collects information efficiently and in accordance with priorities / timetable established during planning, making adjustments as necessary e. reacts to enemy contact and direct / indirect fire IAW BTS 5005, ‘React to Contact / 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p style="text-align: center;">Direct Fire / Indirect Fire.’</p> <p>7. The reconnaissance party commander submits/transmits accurate reconnaissance information IAW the required format no later than the time specified in orders. Oral briefings are clear and concise and written reconnaissance reports / design proformas / overlays / traces are legible and complete.</p>			

3012 B - RECONNOITRE A DEMOLITION TARGET**ELEMENT: PNR SECT****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The reconnaissance party receives orders to reconnoitre a potential demolition target. Orders include the target location, type of obstacle to be reconnoitred, obstacle intent, the time by which the reconnaissance report is due, and the format in which the information is to be provided (eg. written DND 2103 or 2107, oral transmission of E120B or E122B, etc). Orders may include the quantities of Class IV (field defences) or Class V (ammunition, including mines and explosives) initially allocated to the target, if an initial allocation was provided in orders from higher (eg. push system). The area is secure, but enemy contact with section-size elements is possible.

TASK STANDARD:

The reconnaissance party completes the reconnaissance, acquiring all of the required information, and submits/transmits the information to the superior who ordered the reconnaissance no later than the time specified in orders. Subsequent execution of the mission is not jeopardized by inaccurate measurements taken and / or calculations performed during the reconnaissance. The reconnaissance party takes the appropriate security measures. The time required is increased when performing this task under NBC conditions.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. Reconnaissance party conducts reconnaissance IAW BTS 3011 , 'Conduct Engineer / Pioneer Reconnaissance.' 2. With the supported manoeuvre commander, the reconnaissance party commander sites the obstacle ensuring that the fundamentals of obstacle placement are observed and ensuring that it is integrated with the manoeuvre, fire and other plans, as required.			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>3. Reconnaissance party gathers and records specific information / data for the type of target:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. accurately completes portions of the applicable reconnaissance report <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Obstacle Recce Report (DND 2103/E120B OBSRECCEREP) for all targets other than bridge demolitions, or (2) Bridge Demolition Recce Report (DND 2107/E121B BRDMLRECCEREP) b. provides sketch of zulu harbour, if required. <p>4. If an initial Class IV/V allocation was provided in orders, the reconnaissance party commander confirms that the initial allocation is sufficient to execute the demolition and achieve the required obstacle intent or identifies the shortfall for corrective action.</p>			

3013 B - RECONNOITRE A GAP CROSSING SITE**ELEMENT: PNR SECT****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The reconnaissance party commander receives orders to reconnoitre a gap-crossing site. Orders include the type of crossing required (eg. assault boat, NSB, aerial ropeway). Orders also include the time by which reconnaissance report is due, types / MLC of vehicles, traffic density, loads to be crossed (eg. for aerial ropeway), and the format in which the information is to be provided (eg. DND 2106, design proforma, support area matrix, map trace, etc). Contact with up to section-sized enemy elements during this task may be possible.

TASK STANDARD:

The reconnaissance party completes the reconnaissance, acquiring all the requested / required information and submits / transmits the information to the superior who ordered the reconnaissance no later than the time specified in orders. Subsequent execution of the mission is not jeopardized by inaccurate measurements taken or calculations performed during the reconnaissance. The reconnaissance party takes the appropriate security measures to minimize casualties during the reconnaissance and to deny the enemy knowledge of the reconnaissance party's intentions.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. Reconnaissance party conducts reconnaissance IAW BTS 3011 , 'Conduct Engineer / Pioneer Reconnaissance.' 2. Reconnaissance party gathers and records specific information / data for type of gap crossing means indicated in orders, as follows: a. employs distance and elevation measuring technique appropriate to the tactical			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>situation</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. accurately completes applicable portions of Crossing Site Recce Report (DND 2106/E112B GAPRECCEREP) c. site plan sketch on the DND 2106 includes all of the key areas appropriate to the crossing means (eg. debussing area, BOLP, BIP for assault boat crossing sites, and launch sites, raft tracks, landing points, construction area) d. accurately completes design proforma, if applicable e. completes a support area matrix to include for each support area: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) location description (2) site size / capacity (3) access in and out (4) drainage (5) vegetation (6) camouflage (7) soil bearing capacity. 			

3014 B - RECONNOITRE AN ENEMY MINEFIELD**ELEMENT: PNR SECT****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

A reconnaissance party is ordered to conduct a dismounted minefield reconnaissance in support of a deliberate breaching operation. The reconnaissance is conducted during a period of reduced visibility. Orders include the grid reference of the start point for the reconnaissance, the bearing to be taken, and the time by which the reconnaissance information is due. The minefield is less than 350 metres in depth. A security element is provided to provide direct/request indirect fire in the event that the reconnaissance party is detected. No iterations of training on this task are performed under NBC conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The reconnaissance party completes the reconnaissance and submits a report within the time allotted. The party detects all mines and trip wires on the bearing provided in orders. The party takes all reasonable precautions to avoid detection during the reconnaissance.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The reconnaissance party commander plans and conducts a reconnaissance IAW BTS 3011 , 'Conduct Engineer / Pioneer Reconnaissance.' 2. The reconnaissance party conducts reconnaissance: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. party uses concealed routes to approach the start point of the reconnaissance <li>b. party adopts a single file formation upon arrival at the start point. No 1 fastens the fish line to the start point and advances 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>along the required bearing</p> <p>c. NCO in charge (IC) ensures that the reconnaissance party maintains the correct bearing and spacing throughout the reconnaissance</p> <p>d. No 1 searches one metre wide path, feeling for trip wires, searching for surface mines, and prodding for buried mines</p> <p>e. No 1 takes the following action on locating a trip wire/mine:</p> <p>(1) Trip Wire:</p> <p>(a) detaches the reel of fish line and traces the trip wire to both ends</p> <p>(b) searches path along the trip wire for other trip wires and mines</p> <p>(c) neutralizes mechanism at the end of the trip wire and cuts the wire only after both ends have been checked</p> <p>(d) reattaches the reel of fish line and continues searching along the required bearing</p> <p>(2) Mine:</p> <p>(a) if capable of doing so, No 1 neutralizes and marks the mine. If not, then simply marks the mine</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>(b) No 1 withdraws to allow the IC to move forward to investigate the mine</p> <p>(c) if the IC is capable of neutralizing the mine he does so, if not the mine is marked and bypassed</p> <p>(d) No 1 reassumes the point position and continues searching</p> <p>f. the IC follows No 1 and marks all reported/marked trip wires and mines on the fish line using pre-arranged code (loops in fish line, etc)</p> <p>g. No 2 follows a minimum of five metres behind the IC, using a mine detector to search for deeper buried metallic mines. When something is located it is marked and the IC is informed. The No 2 then withdraws a minimum of five metres to allow the IC to return to investigate the finding. IAW IC's instructions, No 1 either continues the search during the IC's investigation or waits until the investigation is complete before continuing the search</p> <p>h. at a previously determined point or when the IC determines that the party has reached the far side of the minefield, the fish line is marked to identify the finish point</p> <p>i. the party retraces its steps, in reverse order, running the fish line through their hands such that the loops warn them of the positions of any mines</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards		Eff	NPrac	Ineff
j.	No 1 reels in the fish line and recovers all mine markers			
k.	if unknown mines are found, the IC notes all information he can without disturbing the mine and returns to the friendly side			
l.	upon returning to the start point, all stores are accounted for to ensure that nothing has been left behind.			
3.	If other obstacles are encountered during the reconnaissance, all possible information is gathered to be included in the reconnaissance briefing/report.			
4.	Upon return to the parent unit, the party lays out the fish line and the position of all mines are recorded. The IC then plots to scale the location and type of mines encountered on a record drawing, identifying the start point, end point, and all mines found in between.			

I3701 C - CONDUCTS SCREEN AND FLANK SECURITY**ELEMENT: AA PL****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The anti-armour platoon is ordered to screen or flank the manoeuvre unit's movement, by fire if necessary. The enemy situation is unknown.

TASK STANDARD:

The anti-armour platoon provides early warning of enemy approach. The platoon provides information on enemy equipment, organization, and axis of advance. The platoon does not allow the enemy to flank the main body IAW its assigned mission.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon commander plans to conduct screen and flank security: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. platoon orients on the enemy's mounted avenues of approach b. the screen / flank is within effective supporting range of battalion mortars and artillery c. the platoon commander or higher HQ specifies engagement control measures to coordinate the initial and subsequent fires and movement d. the platoon commander specifies open fire policy and priority of engagement IAW higher orders. 2. The platoon occupies the screen /flank:			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>a. firing positions and OPs are established</p> <p>b. the screen / flank is occupied.</p> <p>3. The platoon screens and provides flank security to the supported manoeuvre element:</p> <p>a. once in positions, the platoon sections / detachments observe their assigned sectors</p> <p>b. the platoon orients on the supported manoeuvre elements</p> <p>c. firing positions provide overwatch of the potential enemy positions and avenues of approach</p> <p>d. flank protection of supported manoeuvre elements is continuous</p> <p>e. flank firing positions cannot be engaged by the same enemy fires that are engaging the manoeuvre elements</p> <p>f. security is not masked by friendly movement</p> <p>g. enemy vehicles closest to the supported manoeuvre elements are engaged first.</p> <p>4. The platoon coordinates with the supported manoeuvre elements:</p> <p>a. the platoon maintains direct communication with the supported manoeuvre elements</p> <p>b. the platoon's movement and security are consistent with the manoeuvre requirements of the supported manoeuvre elements</p> <p>c. screen / flank security movement does not</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>delay supported manoeuvre elements</p> <p>d. enemy forces not presenting an immediate threat to the supported manoeuvre elements are reported to the supported manoeuvre elements, but not engaged.</p> <p>5. The platoon detects enemy armour:</p> <p>a. the platoon performs surveillance</p> <p>b. all enemy elements in the sector are observed.</p> <p>6. The platoon provides a fire base:</p> <p>a. gunners identify and engage targets within 30 seconds of the order to engage</p> <p>b. platoon elements know the direction, size, and location of the enemy force as soon as possible after identification</p> <p>c. fire base is away from friendly units</p> <p>d. as friendly elements close with the enemy, anti-armour platoon lifts and shifts fire on withdrawing enemy vehicles, or covers likely enemy avenues of reinforcement IAW orders</p> <p>7. The platoon engages the enemy IAW its assigned mission:</p> <p>a. enemy reconnaissance elements are destroyed or repelled</p> <p>b. enemy combat elements are halted or forced to deploy</p> <p>c. enemy forces are not engaged if they</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards		Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>exceed the engagement criteria specified by the platoon commander or higher HQ.</p> <p>8. The platoon maintains early warning:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. contact of the enemy is maintained b. enemy elements are engaged by screening / flanking elements before enemy observes or engages the manoeuvre unit main body c. the manoeuvre unit main body is not observed or engaged with direct fire unless warned by the platoon <p>9. The platoon reports enemy activity:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. all enemy activity in the assigned sector is reported to the next higher HQ b. reports are sent IAW SOPs c. all reports are submitted as soon as possible after enemy activities are observed. <p>10. The platoon moves:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. to new firing positions and OPs as specified in orders b. in conjunction with higher intent. 				

I3702 C - CONDUCT A LAY BACK PATROL**ELEMENT: PLATOON****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The platoon has been ordered to act as a lay back force or has been cut off from friendly units. The enemy has indirect fire and close air support (CAS) capabilities. The platoon must provide its own security.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon prevents the enemy from learning its location, strength, and intentions. The platoon avoids decisive engagement. The platoon accomplishes its assigned combat tasks according to the standards for those specific tasks. The platoon links up with friendly forces at the time and place specified by the orders.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon commander makes an estimate of the situation and plans for a deliberate lay back operation IAW the assigned mission: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. task organizes the platoon for the operation b. uses only those personnel and equipment that are needed c. evacuates wounded personnel, inoperable equipment, or excess items d. requests additional manoeuvre arm, support arm, or service assets as needed (Fire Controller (FC), MAs, engineers, anti-armour weapons, APCs, machine guns, demolitions, or special equipment) e. plans for deception of the enemy or ensures the platoon actions support the higher unit's 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>deception plan.</p> <p>2. The platoon commander conducts reconnaissance of the area to confirm or deny the plan:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. conducts a map reconnaissance b. conducts a ground reconnaissance as time permits. Identifies: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) suitable sites for patrol bases (2) OPs (3) caches (4) water sources (5) avenues of approach (mounted and foot) (6) kill zones (7) engagement areas (8) likely enemy objectives and positions (9) covered and concealed approach routes. <p>3. The platoon 2IC assists the platoon commander in preparing the platoon for the operation IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure':</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. stocks additional supplies for support when not in contact with friendly units b. plans possible caches 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>c. plans for PW and casualty evacuation</p> <p>4. If the platoon is cut off from friendly units and has standing orders to conduct unplanned lay back operations, the platoon commander:</p> <p>a. establishes local security, to include OPs and early warning devices and notifies the company</p> <p>b. makes an estimate based on the enemy situation and the status of elements under platoon control and plans the operation</p> <p>c. decides whether to remain in position or to move to a hide position in a different location based on the situation estimate</p> <p>d. follows the same steps as a deliberate operation once in position</p> <p>5. The platoon conducts the lay back operation:</p> <p>a. executes deception activities IAW the order</p> <p>b. moves undetected to the hide position</p> <p>c. remains undetected by the enemy during the operation. Refer to BTS 3001, ‘Maintain Operations Security.’</p> <p>6. The platoon conducts combat operations against the enemy:</p> <p>a. attacks high-priority targets in enemy's rear (command and control, manoeuvre arm, support arm, lines of communication) based on the platoon commander's intent or the platoon mission</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. collects intelligence on enemy forces c. calls for and controls artillery and air strikes d. avoids decisive engagement by the enemy unless required by the platoon commander's intent. <p>7. The platoon links up with friendly forces:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. determines the manner of regaining contact with friendly units b. conducts linkup as a moving or a stationary unit IAW BTS 4307, 'Link-up' c. returns to friendly unit no later than the time specified by higher HQ. 			

MANOUEVRE

OFFENSIVE OPERATIONS

4001 B/C - ATTACK

ELEMENT: SECT / PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section / platoon commander reacts to effective enemy fire, and conducts a quick attack. The enemy has been in position for 24 hours and may have prepared positions with mines and wire. Both friendly and enemy forces have indirect fire capabilities. When a well-prepared enemy defence must be defeated, a deliberate attack may be required, with emphasis on planning and preparation at the expense of speed and time. In this case, the enemy location may or may not be known, and the enemy may or may not have engaged the friendly force.

TASK STANDARD:

The section / platoon successfully conducts a quick or deliberate attack. The section / platoon captures, destroys or forces the withdrawal of the enemy IAW the assigned mission.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NP Prac	Ineff
1. The section takes action IAW Section Battle Drill Two, 'Reaction to Effective Enemy Fire,' and IAW Section Battle Drill Three, 'Locates the Enemy.' 2. Elements not in contact help to determine essential enemy information: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. location of, and covered and concealed routes into enemy's flanks and rear b. possible locations of obstacles and supporting enemy elements 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>c. all information on the enemy and terrain is reported to the section / platoon commander and relayed to the higher HQ.</p> <p>3. If the section is operating independently, the section commander decides if the section has sufficient combat power to destroy the enemy, or if the section should dig in, bypass, or withdraw.</p> <p>4. If the section is part of a platoon, the platoon commander takes action IAW Platoon Battle Drill One, ‘Reaction to Section coming under Effective Enemy Fire,’ and moves forward to assess the situation and takes over, or orders the section commander to attack.</p> <p>5. If the section is operating independently and has sufficient combat power to destroy the enemy, or on order from the platoon commander to attack, the section commander completes a combat estimate, issues battle orders, and takes immediate action IAW Section Battle Drills:</p> <p>a. Battle Drill Four - ‘Winning the Fire Fight’</p> <p>b. Battle Drill Five - ‘Approach’</p> <p>c. Battle Drill Six - ‘The Assault’</p> <p>d. Battle Drill Seven - ‘Consolidation.’</p> <p>6. Additional fire support for the section attack may be obtained from the platoon.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>7. If the platoon commander decides to conduct a platoon attack, he completes a combat estimate, issues battle orders, and takes action IAW Platoon Battle Drills:</p> <p>a. Battle Drill Two - ‘The Hasty Attack’</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>b. Battle Drill Three - 'Consolidation.'</p> <p>8. The section / platoon exploits any opportunity that may exist, but does not proceed beyond the limit of exploitation.</p> <p>9. The section / platoon commander reports the situation to higher HQ and continues the mission.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

4001 D - ATTACK

ELEMENT: COMPANY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The company commander reacts to effective enemy fire, and conducts a quick attack. The enemy has been in position for 24 hours and may have prepared positions with mines and wire. Both friendly and enemy forces have indirect fire capabilities. When a well-prepared enemy defence must be defeated, a deliberate attack may be required, with emphasis on planning and preparation at the expense of speed and time. In this case, the enemy location may or may not be known, and the enemy may or may not have engaged the friendly force.

TASK STANDARD:

The company successfully conducts a quick or deliberate attack. The company captures, destroys or forces the withdrawal of the enemy IAW the assigned mission.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>1. The platoon takes action IAW Platoon Battle Drill One, 'Reaction to Section coming under Effective Enemy Fire,' and the platoon commander moves forward to assess the situation.</p> <p>2. The platoon commander sends a contact report to the company commander.</p> <p>3. Elements not in contact help to determine essential enemy information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. location of, and covered and concealed routes into enemy's flanks and rearb. possible locations of obstacles and supporting enemy elements			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>c. all information on the enemy and terrain is reported to the company commander and relayed to the higher HQ.</p> <p>4. Based on the contact report, the company commander orders the platoon commander to attack, or moves forward and decides if the company has sufficient combat power to destroy the enemy, or whether the company should dig in, bypass, or withdraw.</p> <p>5. If the company is to conduct a quick attack, the company commander:</p> <p>a. issues a warning order</p> <p>b. completes a combat estimate</p> <p>c. makes a direct and indirect fire plan</p> <p>d. ensures the company prepares for battle:</p> <p>(1) pickets the enemy</p> <p>(2) regroups:</p> <p>(a) command element</p> <p>(b) fire support element</p> <p>(c) assault element</p> <p>(d) protective elements</p> <p>(e) service support elements</p> <p>(f) reserve element</p> <p>(3) conducts resupply</p> <p>(4) makes preliminary moves</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>(5) secures the line of departure (LD)</p> <p>e. issues verbal orders</p> <p>6. The company conducts the attack:</p> <p>a. mounting stage</p> <p>b. assault stage:</p> <p>(1) break-in</p> <p>(2) fighting through</p> <p>c. consolidation stage.</p> <p>7. The company exploits any opportunity that may exist, but does not proceed beyond the limit of exploitation.</p> <p>8. The company commander reports the situation to higher HQ and continues the mission.</p>			

4002 B/C - ESTABLISH A FIRE BASE**ELEMENT: SECT / PL****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The section / platoon is tasked to establish a firebase. The assault element is either in or expected to make contact and can request suppressive fire on the enemy.

TASK STANDARD:

The section / platoon suppresses the enemy so that it is unable to manoeuvre and the friendly assault force is able to conduct their assigned mission. Effective control measures and recognition signals are employed to prevent or minimize casualties due to friendly fire.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The section / platoon commander conducts a reconnaissance of the tentative fire base position and routes to it: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. determines which weapons can provide effective fire support to cover the assault element b. ensures position provides observation of and fields of fire covering the objective area, and approaches or withdrawal routes, as designated c. ensures position provides adequate cover and concealment as appropriate. 2. The section / platoon commander confirms with the higher commander: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. ability to bring effective fire support onto the objective 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>b. fire control measures.</p> <p>3. The section / platoon commander:</p> <p>a. establishes arcs of fire, specific targets, and reference points</p> <p>b. designates engagement procedures and fire control measures (rate of fire, check fire, shift fire)</p> <p>c. establishes priority of targets</p> <p>d. designates action on receipt of check fire.</p> <p>4. The section / platoon moves to firing positions:</p> <p>a. establishes security for the move</p> <p>b. employs covered and concealed routes</p> <p>c. is in position at the designated time</p> <p>d. adopts good positions of concealment and observation / fire</p> <p>e. provides all-round security</p> <p>f. verifies fire engagement procedures and control measures.</p> <p>5. The section / platoon maintains observation and reports on additional enemy forces or activity.</p> <p>6. On order, the section / platoon, under the higher commander's control, engages the enemy with appropriate weapons and rate of fire.</p> <p>7. IAW orders, the section / platoon:</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. shifts and / or checks fire b. continues to observe assigned sectors and is prepared to engage any threat to the assault force c. moves to a position to block possible enemy counter attack, or to exploit. 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

4003 C/D - BREAKOUT

ELEMENT: PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon / company has become encircled, either unintentionally, or deliberately as part of a defensive plan. Other friendly elements may also be encircled. The enemy has the capability to attack by air, ground and indirect fire. Breaking out by stealth is not feasible. The platoon / company provides its own security.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon / company moves its personnel and primary weapon systems out from the encirclement. Where the platoon / company has become encircled unintentionally, the breakout is initiated as soon as possible and before the enemy has the time to prepare its defences. Where the platoon / company becomes encircled deliberately and is breaking out on order, the breakout starts no later than the time ordered. Effective control measures and recognition signals are employed to prevent or minimize casualties due to friendly fire.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon / company commander organizes the encircled force: a. assumes control of all friendly forces in the encirclement and initiates reestablishment of a chain of command as soon as possible b. initiates the deployment of all elements for all-round defence c. establishes a reserve d. obtains status of units (personnel, weapons, equipment, ammunition and other supplies)			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p style="text-align: center;">and reorganizes logistics.</p> <p>2. The platoon / company commander maintains communications with higher HQ.</p> <p>3. The platoon / company commander plans the breakout:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. directs reconnaissance of the enemy to determine weak points and gaps b. decides on the breakout point(s) c. designates an assault element to create and maintain the opening and security elements to provide protection and deception on the perimeter and to cover the front, flanks and rear of the main body while it is moving d. organizes all available direct and indirect fire support, and develops an offensive fire plan e. conducts linkup and rearward passage of lines planning and coordination f. prepares to destroy equipment that cannot be moved g. makes provision for personnel who cannot accompany the breakout. <p>4. The platoon / company executes the attack:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. rapidly executes the attack before the enemy can organize his defences, or on order for a deliberate encirclement. b. the attack focuses the manoeuvre units and fire support at gap or weakness in the 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>enemy's defences</p> <p>c. the platoon / company maintains all-round security and fixes the enemy in other areas where possible</p> <p>d. deception activities are employed to surprise the enemy as to the time and location of the breakout attack</p> <p>e. the attack exploits limited visibility if possible</p> <p>f. the attack is coordinated with supporting attacks by friendly units outside the encirclement when possible</p> <p>g. on order, the defending elements disengage and follow the breakout attack</p> <p>h. the defending elements blow charges and destroy equipment left behind</p> <p>i. the platoon / company effectively employs control measures and recognition signals to prevent or minimize casualties due to friendly fire</p> <p>j. the platoon / company reports breakout status to higher HQ.</p>			

4004 C/D - RAID**ELEMENT: PL / COY****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The platoon / company is in the assembly area or defensive sector / battle position. It has been ordered to launch a penetration of enemy territory to gain information, create confusion, destroy material and disrupt enemy plans. The objective is lightly defended. Lightly defended or undefended routes are available to move to the objective. The specific task to be accomplished on the objective is outlined in orders, and is normally destruction of a combat support, combat service support, or command and control facility, or the capture of enemy personnel. Timings for the operation are specified.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon / company initiates the raid not later than the time specified in the order, surprises the enemy, assaults the objective and accomplishes its assigned task within the commander's intent. It obtains all information requirements from the raid site. Effective control measures and recognition signals are employed to prevent or minimize casualties due to friendly fire. The platoon / company retains sufficient combat power to continue subsequent operations IAW superior commander's orders.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. Conduct battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 , 'Battle Procedure,' with special attention paid to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. enemy identification and location b. time appreciation c. map study d. coordination with friendly units, departure and return through friendly lines, and fire 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>support</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. selection of patrol members f. equipment and weapons g. reconnaissance h. detailed planning: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) rehearsals for action at the objective (2) signals (3) passwords (4) chain of command <p>2. The platoon / company regroups:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. security, support, assault elements and required special teams (eg. demolition, PW, search, etc) are identified and organized b. maintains subunit integrity when possible. <p>3. The patrol / company commander establishes the ORV and the reconnaissance group conducts a reconnaissance:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. verify routes to security, support and assault positions, and the objective b. identifies enemy or likely enemy positions, and obstacles c. observe the enemy, if possible, and verify and update intelligence information d. conduct reconnaissance undetected 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>e. on completion of the reconnaissance, the raid commander, if possible, ensures that constant observation is maintained on the objective and the routes leading to it, or continues to seek current information accordingly.</p> <p>4. The execution or cancellation of the raid is based on information gained during the reconnaissance and the higher commander's guidance:</p> <p>a. platoon / company commander could recommend cancellation if the number of enemy personnel in the objective area significantly alters the engagement ratio, or if enemy activity in the target area is significantly increased, movement of outside elements into the area is detected or increased air coverage is present that would likely result in failure</p> <p>b. platoon / company commander adjusts the raid plan to incorporate the current intelligence.</p> <p>5. The conduct of the raid is considered feasible:</p> <p>a. before moving into positions, each element checks ammunition, weapons and special equipment for the mission</p> <p>b. security element occupies designated positions</p> <p>c. control measures for the objective, lanes, limits of exploitation, etc, are designated</p> <p>d. withdrawal routes back to friendly lines are designated.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>6. The platoon / company moves to covered and concealed positions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. support element moves undetected b. support element assumes positions from which fire may be placed on the objective. c. the assault element occupies the attack position. <p>7. The platoon / company conducts a dismounted raid:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the planned indirect suppressive or obscuration fire on known and suspected enemy positions that can support the objective is initiated b. the assault element advances towards the objective c. the assault element holds fire until ready to penetrate the objective or they are engaged by direct enemy fire d. on arrival at the designated point/line, the assault element signals for the shifting of fire e. indirect fire on the objective is shifted f. the support element shifts fire to the flanks of targets, roads, bridges or outlying fire bases g. the assault element fights through to the far side of the objective h. once the assault has started, the security 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>element prevents enemy entry into or escape from the objective area</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. special teams accomplish all assigned tasks (demolition teams set charges, search teams search the objective and secure any enemy survivors as prisoners, etc) j. special team commanders signal the raid commander when assigned tasks are completed. <p>8. The platoon / company conducts a mounted raid:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the platoon / company occupies positions in a hide until the order is given to initiate the raid b. radio silence is maintained c. movement, noise and light discipline are maintained d. the planned indirect suppression or obscuration fire is initiated e. assault elements commence firing and advance to the objective f. the assault element does not proceed beyond the limit of exploitation g. the assault element fights through the objective, achieving the raid intent. <p>9. On order or signal of the platoon / company commander, the assault element withdraws from the objective:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. element / teams commanders account for all 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>personnel and report casualty status to the platoon / company commander</p> <p>b. direct or indirect fire is ordered to mask the withdrawal</p> <p>c. the withdrawal is ordered before the enemy can fix the platoon / company.</p> <p>10. The platoon / company moves to the designated ORV:</p> <p>a. the platoon / company withdraws from the objective in the sequence designated in the order</p> <p>b. all personnel and equipment are accounted for</p> <p>c. the position is covered and concealed away from the objective area</p> <p>d. ammunition and equipment is redistributed</p> <p>e. evacuation of wounded is arranged</p> <p>f. handle PWs IAW BTS 6004, 'Handle PWs and Detainees.'</p> <p>11. The platoon / company commander provides a patrol / raid report as soon as possible to battle group / battalion HQ.</p>			

4005 C - FIGHT IN A BUILT-UP AREA (FIBUA)**ELEMENT: PLATOON****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The platoon is operating as a part of a higher unit in a built-up area (BUA) environment. In most instances the platoon will be tasked with attacking only one building at a time. The platoon identifies enemy of unknown size in a building(s) and is tasked to clear the building(s). The platoon will have the required support weapons and include Engineer / Pioneer support and may include the support of tanks. Appropriate rules of engagement are in effect. Further mission specific conditions may be applied as deemed relevant.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon kills, captures, or forces the withdrawal of all enemy in the building(s) or within the assigned platoon objective, to the greatest extent possible given the tactical situation and size of enemy force. The platoon executes its mission within the time specified in the operation order. The platoon maintains a sufficient force capable of reacting to an enemy counter-attack. The platoon consolidates and prepares to support follow-on operations when its objective is reached or when forced to do so by attrition. Rules of engagement are adhered to.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 , 'Battle Procedure,' with particular attention to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. conducting a detailed terrain analysis, with due consideration given to the three-dimensional aspects of applicable criteria including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) avenues of approach 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>(2) fields of fire and observation</p> <p>(3) obstacles</p> <p>(4) cover and concealment</p> <p>(5) manoeuvre and mobility</p> <p>(6) fire hazard</p> <p>(7) command and control</p> <p>(8) key terrain</p> <p>b. ensuring that effective command, control and coordination measures are established</p> <p>c. providing for explosives and mission essential equipment</p> <p>d. providing for ammunition resupply</p> <p>e. providing for the handling of casualties, prisoners of war, and non-combatants.</p> <p>2. The platoon commander task-organizes the platoon into an assault element and a support element, tailored and armed appropriately to accomplish the assigned mission.</p> <p>3. Movement to the objective is conducted through the use of covered and concealed routes, including rooftops, exploiting limited visibility conditions whenever possible.</p> <p>4. Movement is conducted, when possible, after enemy defensive fires have been suppressed or obscured, and along routes which do not mask friendly suppressive fires. Open areas should be crossed rapidly under the concealment of smoke and suppression of the enemy.</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>5. The platoon commander is well forward during the execution of the operation and maintains positive command and control throughout.</p> <p>6. The platoon commander commits and supports the initial assault element, and isolation of the point of entry is ensured through the use of suppressive fires and / or smoke.</p> <p>7. Actions of the support element:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. assignment of specific areas of responsibility to individual soldiers and weapon systems b. suppression and / or impairment of enemy gunners within the objective building(s) and adjacent buildings to allow the assault element to complete entry operations with minimum casualties c. isolation of the objective building(s) with direct and indirect fires to prevent enemy withdrawal, reinforcement or counter-attack; d. shifting supporting fires as necessary; e. provision of replacements and ammunition resupply to the assault force as required f. maintenance of a reserve, located where the assault can be rapidly reinforced. <p>8. The assault element assaults the objective building(s) under direction of the platoon commander and building clearance drills are executed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the objective is approached from the enemy flank or rear only when sufficient fires are 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>suppressing the enemy</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. an entry point is established and the building is entered at the highest level possible, and only from the ground level when forced to do so c. grenades are employed after due consideration is given to fratricide and collateral damage, including injury to non-combatants as applicable d. the entry point is secured as well as covering staircases and other routes leading to upper and lower stories once inside the building e. rooms which overlook the approaches to the objective building are cleared first; f. cleared rooms are marked IAW SOPs g. clearance teams are positioned to secure entry points, hallways, stairs and cleared rooms from enemy infiltration. <p>9. Once the initial assault element has established a foothold and consolidated, the platoon commander launches follow-on assault forces to continue the attack as necessary. The follow-on assault forces should be supported by the consolidated assault troops. The platoon commander may lead in the reserve forces if required to continue the attack.</p> <p>10. The assault element commander clears to the limit of the assigned objective and orders consolidation once it has been secured or when forced to do so.</p> <p>11. Communications with the platoon commander and the support element are maintained throughout and the</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>tactical situation is reported when warranted and / or requested.</p> <p>12. The platoon commander orders consolidation in the cleared building(s) once the objective has been secured or when forced to do so. The platoon consolidates IAW BTS 4305, 'Consolidate':</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the chain of command is confirmed and / or re-established; b. the platoon status and tactical situation are reported to the higher HQ IAW SOPs c. all-round defence is established and soldiers are positioned to cover enemy routes of counter-attack and infiltration into the building d. the building(s), including the entry point(s), is marked IAW SOPs to indicate that it has been cleared e. casualties are treated and evacuated f. ammunition is redistributed and resupply is requested as required; and g. the platoon prepares to support follow-on operations and / or continues its assigned mission. 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

4005 D - FIGHT IN A BUILT-UP AREA (FIBUA)

ELEMENT: COMPANY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The company is operating as a part of a higher unit and is ordered to assault an enemy platoon in a built-up area. The enemy is in prepared positions, protected by obstacles. The enemy has crew-served weapons and is supported by indirect fire. The company will have the required support weapons and specialized equipment to carry out its task. This will normally include Engineer / Pioneer support and may include the support of tanks. Appropriate rules of engagement are in effect. Further mission-specific conditions may be applied as deemed relevant.

TASK STANDARD:

The company kills, captures or forces the withdrawal of all enemy in its assigned area to the greatest extent possible given the tactical situation and size of enemy force. The company executes its mission within the time specified in the operation order. The company maintains a sufficient force capable of reacting to an enemy counter-attack. The company consolidates and prepares to support follow-on operations when its objective is reached or when forced to do so by attrition. Rules of engagement are adhered to.

Sub Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The company commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 , 'Battle Procedure,' with particular attention to: a. conducting a detailed terrain analysis, with due consideration given to the three-dimensional aspects of applicable criteria including: (1) avenues of approach			

Sub Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>(2) fields of fire and observation</p> <p>(3) obstacles</p> <p>(4) cover and concealment</p> <p>(5) manoeuvre and mobility</p> <p>(6) fire hazard</p> <p>(7) command and control</p> <p>(8) key terrain</p> <p>b. establishing effective command, control and coordination measures including sectors, report lines, boundaries and coordinating points</p> <p>c. developing a scheme of manoeuvre which exploits enemy flanks, gaps and weaknesses</p> <p>d. maintenance of operations security including the development and execution of appropriate deception measures</p> <p>e. providing for explosives and mission essential equipment</p> <p>f. providing for ammunition resupply</p> <p>g. providing for the handling of casualties, prisoners of war, and non-combatants.</p> <p>2. The company commander task-organizes the company into assault and support elements, tailored and armed appropriately to accomplish the assigned mission.</p> <p>3. Movement to the assault position is conducted through the use of covered and concealed routes to</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>approach the enemy flanks, rear, gaps or weakly held areas.</p> <p>4. Reconnaissance and security elements are employed to detect enemy forces, positions and obstacles, and to prevent the same from interfering with the company movement.</p> <p>5. The company commander is well forward during the execution of the operation and maintains positive command and control throughout.</p> <p>6. The company commander positions support elements to provide support to the assault element. Actions of the support element include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. isolation of the objective using direct and indirect fire support b. suppression of enemy positions and weapon systems c. over-watching the movement of the assault element. <p>7. The company commander positions the reserve force well forward for rapid response to reinforce the assault element, repel any enemy counter-attack, or exploit success.</p> <p>8. The company commander directs the assault to commence. Actions include directing the support element to initiate fires to suppress the enemy in the objective area, or to employ smoke to conceal the movement of the assault element.</p> <p>9. The assault element conducts the assault on the enemy objective. Actions include:</p>			

Sub Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. seizing a foothold in the objective b. killing, capturing, destroying or forcing the withdrawal of the enemy as required by the commander's intent c. breaching obstacles encountered d. clearing buildings IAW established clearance drills e. signaling the supporting fires to be lifted and / or shifted when they endanger the assault element f. reporting to the company commander when the objective has been secured. 			
<p>10. The company commander commits the reserve as the situation warrants:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. to exploit success or an enemy weakness b. to support a forward element through manoeuvre c. to assume the mission of another element which no longer has sufficient combat power to attain its task d. to maintain the momentum of the attack e. to hold buildings seized by another element f. to defeat, block or repel enemy counter-attacks. 			
<p>11. The assault continues until all organized resistance is overcome or until the limit of the assigned objective has been reached. Based on the commander's intent, further movement / actions may take place to</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>exploit the assault.</p> <p>12. Element commanders keep the company commander informed of their status and tactical situation throughout the operation IAW the operation order and SOPs.</p> <p>13. The company commander orders consolidation once the objective has been secured or when forced to do so. The company consolidates IAW BTS 4305, ‘Consolidate’:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the chain of command is confirmed and / or re-established b. the company status and tactical situation are reported to the higher HQ IAW SOPs c. all-round defence is established and elements are positioned to cover enemy routes of counter-attack and infiltration into the objective area if consistent with the commander’s intent d. the objective buildings are marked IAW SOPs to indicate that they have been cleared e. casualties are treated and evacuated f. resupply is carried out as required g. the company prepares to support follow-on operations and / or continues its assigned mission. 			

4006 C - WOODS CLEARING**ELEMENT: PLATOON****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

While moving as a part of a larger force, the platoon identifies a small wooded area forming part of an enemy defensive position. The platoon is ordered to conduct woods clearing. The platoon and enemy elements have indirect fire available.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon clears the wooded area by killing, capturing, or forcing the withdrawal of the enemy. The platoon continues follow-on operations.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon commander organizes the platoon: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. cut-off group: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) section LMG weapons detachments (2) platoon APCs to provide cut-off, or to provide fire support for the sweep and assault groups (3) commanded by platoon 2IC b. sweep group: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) one or two sections (2) commanded by section commander, or platoon commander if more than one section c. assault group: 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>(1) composed of the remaining section(s)</p> <p>(2) any attached specialists, such as pioneers</p> <p>(3) commanded by the section commander, or platoon commander if more than one section</p> <p>2. Platoon drill for woods clearing:</p> <p>a. planning and preparation:</p> <p>(1) battle procedure takes place IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure'</p> <p>(2) platoon commander must complete a reconnaissance to determine:</p> <p>(a) likely enemy lines of withdrawal</p> <p>(b) shape of the woods and direction to clear it</p> <p>(c) possible killing zones</p> <p>(d) positions for cut off groups</p> <p>(e) wind, if smoke is to be used</p> <p>(3) well rehearsed drill which requires minimum of orders and reorganization must be used to achieve the necessary speed</p> <p>(4) the sweep must be thorough, so more than one sweep in thick woods may be necessary</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>(5) the sweep should drive the enemy into a killing zone outside the wooded area, or force the enemy to withdraw</p> <p>b. deployment of cut off group(s):</p> <p>(1) under platoon 2IC, move to concealed positions using covered approaches, to cover all exits from the woods. APCs are used if available, however their vulnerability must be considered</p> <p>(2) security teams can be employed on exposed flanks to guard against their being attacked while covering the chosen killing zone</p> <p>(3) they engage anyone emerging from the woods before the success signal is given</p> <p>c. gaining a lodgment:</p> <p>(1) remainder of platoon will use fire and manoeuvre to gain entry into the edge of the woods, by deliberate attack if necessary. A mechanized platoon remains mounted up to and around the woods, when speed is more important, then dismounts</p> <p>(2) platoon reorganizes into sweep and assault groups</p> <p>(3) sweep group forms an extended line across the front of the platoon, the flanks of the group just inside the</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p style="text-align: center;">woodline</p> <p>(4) the assault group remains one tactical bound (as little as 15-20m in thick woods) behind the centre of the sweep group, ready to attack on either flank</p> <p>d. sweeping the woods:</p> <p>(1) on the order to advance, the sweep group moves forward by team fire and movement, depending on the ground, with the leading soldier searching the ground while the team partner observes and listens, looking up into the trees</p> <p>(2) the assault group focuses upward on the trees for snipers and directional mines, and to the rear</p> <p>(3) the pace is as fast as the slowest team</p> <p>(4) if the sweep group has to halt, all take up fire positions to observe and listen</p> <p>(5) cleared ground is observed by the assault group</p> <p>(6) flanks of the sweep group must indicate progress to the cut off groups by hand signal, but not to expose themselves outside the woodline</p> <p>(7) when sweep group reaches the end of the wood it must not emerge until</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>success or the all clear signal is given to the cut off groups</p> <p>(8) all movement is as silent as possible</p> <p>e. action on meeting the enemy:</p> <p>(1) if engaged at very close range</p> <p>(a) the portion of the sweep group under effective fire should rush the enemy returning fire and, having dealt with the enemy, take cover in line, shout 'Clear' and observe</p> <p>(b) meanwhile, the remainder of the sweep group and the assault group not under effective fire take cover and observe</p> <p>(c) on hearing 'Clear,' the platoon commander will order the advance to continue</p> <p>(2) if engaged beyond 30m:</p> <p>(a) the entire sweep group takes cover and those who can see the enemy return fire</p> <p>(b) the platoon commander will order the assault group to attack, or execute a platoon attack</p> <p>(c) the assault group attacks from the centre towards one of the</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>flanks in order to push the enemy into a killing zone</p> <p>(d) the platoon commander must:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. resist the dislocation of his sweeps ii. limit each objective iii. employ the assault group against the furthest enemy positions iv. ensure that constant observation is maintained <p>(3) the direction of fire must be controlled to minimize fratricide</p> <p>(4) grenades are only used if they can be thrown accurately into a hole or hollow and nearby soldiers are under cover</p> <p>(5) the wounded and PWs are to be handed over to the assault group</p> <p>f. consolidation:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) once the sweep group reaches and clears the edge of the woods, the success signal is given (2) under the platoon commander, the platoon moves to a pre-planned RV, covered by the cut off group(s) 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
(3) the cut off group(s) rejoins the platoon at the RV (4) the platoon consolidates IAW BTS 4305 , 'Consolidate' (5) the platoon commander sends a report to higher HQ (6) continues the mission			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

4007 C/D - AMBUSH

ELEMENT: PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon / company is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route. The enemy is suspected to be detachment or section size. The enemy is operating along lines of communications or avenues of approach, in detachment to company size units, and can be reinforced with similar units, air support and indirect fire.

TASK STANDARD:

The ambush is set not later than the time specified in the order. The specified purpose of the ambush is accomplished IAW the commander's intent. The platoon / company kills, captures, or destroys enemy personnel / equipment during the ambush. The platoon / company obtains all PIR, withdraws from the ambush, and suffers no casualties from friendly fire.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The ambush commander completes battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 , 'Battle Procedure.'			
2. The ambush commander develops an ambush plan, specifically to include: a. security, assault and support elements b. selects a tentative ambush formation or, for area ambushes, element locations or sectors and a scheme of manoeuvre which will maximize engagement of the enemy's flank or rear c. establishes criteria for initiation of ambush d. develops primary and alternate signals for			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>initiation of ambush</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. distributes information on target engagement techniques f. develops a plan for assault element action in the killing zone g. establishes a withdrawal plan. <p>3. The ambush moves to an ORV:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. conducts a passage of lines IAW BTS 4302, 'Passage of Lines' b. moves IAW BTS 4308, 'Move Tactically.' <p>4. The establishes an assembly area (if applicable) IAW BTS 4309 'Occupy Assembly Area / Harbour / Hide.'</p> <p>5. The ambush commander and his reconnaissance group:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. conduct the reconnaissance undetected b. select security positions that provide early warning of enemy approach c. selects a killing zone that restricts enemy manoeuvre on the ambush site d. select positions that permit observation and effective fire into the killing zone e. select an assault position that provides observation, cover and concealment and is close enough for rapid assault into the kill zone f. selects positions large enough for all 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>personnel and fighting positions</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> g. select primary and alternate covered and concealed routes to and from all positions h. maintains observation of the killing zone i. returns to the assembly area undetected. <p>6. Based on the reconnaissance, the ambush commander confirms or modifies the ambush plan:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. modifications to the ambush plan are immediately disseminated to subordinates commanders b. subordinates commanders acknowledge receipt of the modified order and disseminate changes to all personnel. <p>7. The security element moves from the assembly area and occupies a covered and concealed position:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. move into position using the appropriate movement technique b. element commander designates sectors of observation and arcs of fire for individuals and primary weapon systems c. designated personnel set mines, obstacles and early warning devices, as the threat dictates d. element commander occupies a position to control their elements e. element commander checks all target acquisition and night observation devices f. element commander maintains 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>communications with ambush commander</p> <p>g. the occupation and establishment of the element position is undetected by the enemy</p> <p>h. element commander reports to the ambush commander when the position is established.</p> <p>8. Fire base and assault elements move from the assembly area and occupy covered and concealed positions:</p> <p>a. move after security element is in place</p> <p>b. elements move on order</p> <p>c. the ambush commander, company FC (if available) position themselves for best control</p> <p>d. element commanders maintain communication with the ambush commander.</p> <p>9. The ambush prepares the ambush site:</p> <p>a. element commanders confirm sectors of observation and fire for individual and primary weapon systems</p> <p>b. designated personnel set mines, obstacles and early warning devices, as the threat dictates</p> <p>c. element commanders check the ambush site from the enemy side to verify concealment, if possible, and if ground and concealment permit</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>d. element commanders check all target acquisition and night observation devices</p> <p>e. the occupation and establishment of the ambush site is undetected by the enemy</p> <p>f. element commanders report to the ambush commander when the site established.</p> <p>10. The ambush employs OPSEC IAW BTS 3001 ‘Maintain Operations Security’:</p> <p>a. camouflage, noise and light discipline are enforced</p> <p>b. security element is alert and using all available observation devices</p> <p>c. radio silence is enforced.</p> <p>11. When the security element detects the enemy, it alerts the ambush commander:</p> <p>a. as a minimum, the security element reports the size of the enemy force, the direction of movement, and any special weapons or equipment carried</p> <p>b. the security element commander alerts the ambush upon receipt of the report</p> <p>c. if the enemy is moving to attack the ambush, the security element engages the enemy. The ambush commander manoeuvres the other elements, or employs a reserve to deal with the enemy as required and protect the remaining elements of the ambush</p> <p>d. if the enemy is too large, does not enter the killing zone or has too many manoeuvre</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>elements remaining outside the killing zone, the ambush commander does not initiate the ambush. If the enemy does not detect the ambush site, the ambush commander allows them to pass, reports the force to the higher commander, and awaits further orders</p> <p>e. if any element of the ambush is detected, it engages the enemy and alerts the ambush commander</p> <p>f. if the enemy enters the killing zone and falls within the engagement criteria, the ambush is initiated.</p> <p>12. The ambush is executed:</p> <p>a. the ambush commander initiates the ambush or authorizes a subordinate to initiate the ambush</p> <p>b. the ambush is initiated with the largest casualty-producing weapon available. If ambushing mounted or armoured elements, the ambush is initiated with multiple, simultaneous anti-armour shots</p> <p>c. assault and support elements deliver fire with the heaviest, most accurate volume possible</p> <p>d. all weapons engage targets suitable to their characteristics</p> <p>e. the security element blocks any enemy attempts to manoeuvre and engages, blocks reinforcement of the enemy in the killing zone, and blocks escape from the killing</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>zone.</p> <p>13. The ambush uses artillery and other indirect fire support systems:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. suppresses and kills the enemy b. isolates the enemy by blocking reinforcements c. when resistance in the killing zone ends, the ambush commander orders lifting or shifting of all fire and prepares for the assault on the target d. on the ambush commander’s signal, the support element lifts or shifts all supporting fire IAW the ambush commander’s orders. <p>14. If applicable, IAW the order, SOP or ambush commander’s signal, the assault element assaults into the killing zone before the enemy can react effectively.</p> <p>15. The ambush element withdraws from the ambush:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. on order, or upon completion of action in the killing zone, the assault element withdraws to a designated ORV b. the support element covers the withdrawal of the assault element from the killing zone c. the assault element accounts for all personnel and reports to the ambush commander d. the other elements withdraw to the ORV designated in the order e. the ambush commander uses planned indirect fire to assist and cover the 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>withdrawal, or to complete the destruction of the enemy.</p> <p>16. The ambush consolidates at the designated ORV, collating and disseminating intelligence:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the ambush moves from the ORV as soon as all elements report their personnel and equipment accounted for to the ambush commander b. handle PWs IAW BTS 6004, ‘Handle PWs and Detainees’ c. the ambush commander reports the results of the ambush and status to the higher CP IAW SOPs, or orders, and continues the mission as directed by the higher commander. 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

4011 C - SUPPORT AN ATTACK ON A FORTIFIED POSITION

ELEMENT: PNR PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon is supporting a company, which has a mission to attack a fortified position, and has designated support, breach, and assault forces. The attack occurs in daylight or darkness under all weather conditions. Protective obstacles require a dismounted assault.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon creates one lane per assaulting infantry platoon through wire obstacles, and destroys fighting positions with demolitions to maintain the momentum of the attack. Note: The initial breach of the obstacle is performed by an infantry rifle section or platoon.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>1. The platoon commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure,' with emphasis on preparations for assault of a fortified position:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. task organizes the platoon and equipment to support the assault force ensuring that each assaulting infantry platoon is supported by a pioneer sectionb. identifies one pioneer section as the reservec. ensures pioneer sections prepare lane marking storesd. ensures pioneer sections prepare demolition charges (eg. cutting or breaching charges, and bangalore torpedoes) and tools (eg. mine detectors, prodders, shovels, wire cutters, etc)e. ensures pioneer sections dress in			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>appropriate protective clothing and carry white smoke grenades for self-screening when breaching is required during the assault</p> <p>f. coordinates with the company commander to determine the platoon's position in the combat formation</p> <p>g. Note: The platoon commander must be completely knowledgeable of the manoeuvre unit's pioneer SOPs.</p> <p>2. The platoon conducts actions in the assembly area:</p> <p>a. conducts pre-combat checks with emphasis on breaching equipment and demolition charges</p> <p>b. links up with the combat team</p> <p>c. conducts detailed rehearsals with the combat team.</p> <p>3. The platoon manoeuvres with the company onto the final assault position:</p> <p>a. responds / takes appropriate action as directed by the company commander IAW the manoeuvre unit SOP</p> <p>b. the platoon commander ensures the platoon and equipment is positioned well forward and integrated into assault forces' combat formations</p> <p>c. the platoon commander advises the company commander on the best location to bypass or breach the protective</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p style="text-align: center;">obstacle(s).</p> <p>4. The platoon supports the assault force by reducing the protective obstacles along the attack axis:</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">a. creates lanes in enemy protective obstacles:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) the platoon commander remains co-located with the company commander in a position to best influence the assault (2) creates a minimum of one lane per assaulting infantry platoon (3) the infantry platoon commander: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) determines a breach point and advises the pioneer element (b) designates one section as the fire base to suppress the enemy (c) gives instructions for lifting and shifting fire (d) designates one section as the breach section, and the remaining section as the assault section (e) the breach section, including the pioneer element, prepares for the breach (4) the breach is executed: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) the fire base section initiates fire support 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>(b) the rifle platoon commander leads the breach and assault sections to the breach point</p> <p>(c) the breach section probes the obstacle using explosives, if required, to breach the obstacle</p> <p>(d) marks all mines and trip wires</p> <p>(e) the assault is executed by the assault section,, with maximum suppressive fire from the fire base and breach sections</p> <p>(5) once the assault has taken place, the pioneer platoon widens the assault lanes to enable the F and A echelon vehicles to move to the assault position.</p> <p>b. marks the lane(s) through the protective obstacles</p> <p>c. guide the A echelon vehicles through the lanes</p> <p>d. the platoon commander reports the location of the lane(s) and obstacles to the company HQ IAW the unit SOP.</p> <p>5. The platoon supports the assault force in clearing trench systems and knocking out bunkers / fortifications:</p> <p>a. the platoon conducts fire and movement with manoeuvre element</p> <p>b. pioneer sections join assaulting infantry</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>platoons and destroy enemy fighting positions with demolitions, satchel charges, and pole charges</p>			
<p>c. the platoon neutralizes booby-traps found on the objective.</p>			
<p>6. The platoon prepares to continue the mission.</p>			
<p>7. The platoon consolidates and reorganizes:</p>			
<p>a. re-establishes the chain of command</p>			
<p>b. establishes local security in coordination with company</p>			
<p>c. provides support (survivability and counter-mobility) to the manoeuvre unit's hasty defence using platoon equipment and basic load</p>			
<p>d. re-distributes ammunition and weapons</p>			
<p>e. treats and evacuates casualties</p>			
<p>f. searches, silences, segregates, safeguards, and sends prisoners to collection points when the situation permits</p>			
<p>g. provides situation reports to higher HQ.</p>			

I4071 C - CLEAR TRENCH SYSTEM**ELEMENT: PLATOON****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The platoon is attacking as part of a larger force and identifies enemy in a trench system. The platoon commander determines that he has sufficient combat power to manoeuvre and assault the trench system.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon kills, captures, or forces the withdrawal of the enemy in its assigned section of the trench system.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon commander organizes the platoon to clear the trench system: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. designates an assault section and a fire base b. designates the assault section to enter the trench and secure a foothold c. designates the entry point of the trench system and the direction of movement once the platoon begins clearing d. informs the platoon 2IC to position the fire base (personnel, machine guns, APCs) to suppress the trench and isolate the entry point e. calls for artillery and smoke. 2. The assault section commander organizes the assault section: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. directs one fire group to assault and one fire 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>group to support by fire initially, then follow and support the assaulting fire group</p> <p>b. designates the entry point of the trench system.</p> <p>3. The assault section commander orders the assault section to conduct the assault:</p> <p>a. moves the assault section to the last covered and concealed position short of the entry point</p> <p>b. directs a fire group to shift fire away from the entry point and continue to suppress adjacent enemy positions or isolate the trench as required</p> <p>c. positions himself where he can best control his groups</p> <p>d. signals the assault group to enter the trench:</p> <p>(1) the assault section commander and half of the assault group remain in a position short of the trench to add suppressive fire for the initial entry</p> <p>(2) two personnel of the assault group continue toward the entry point. They move in rushes or by crawling</p> <p>(3) upon reaching the edge of the trench, throw a grenade into the trench system</p> <p>(4) after ensuring that the grenade detonates, the two personnel enter the trench system. They fire their weapons down the trench system in</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>opposite directions</p> <p>(5) immediately, they clear in opposite directions until reaching the first corner or intersection. Each soldier halts and takes up a position to block any enemy movement toward the entry point</p> <p>(6) the assault section commander directs the remaining assault group to one of the secured corners or intersections to relieve the riflemen</p> <p>(7) the assault section commander remains at the entry point and reports to the platoon commander that he has entered the trench system and secured a foothold</p> <p>(8) marks the entry point.</p> <p>4. The platoon commander follows the success of the seizure of the foothold with the remainder of the platoon:</p> <p>a. reorganizes the sections, as necessary</p> <p>b. redistributes the ammunition.</p> <p>5. The platoon commander directs one of the fire base sections to move into the trench system and begin clearing in the direction of movement from the foothold:</p> <p>a. repositions the fire base as necessary to continue suppressive fire</p> <p>b. moves into the trench with the assaulting section.</p> <p>6. The section commander of the assaulting section</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>controls the actions of his section as it passes the section securing the foothold:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. designates a lead fire group and a trail fire group b. moves with the lead fire group to the forward most secure corner or intersection and tells the securing group that his section is ready to pass through and continue clearing c. ensures the trail fire group follows and maintains visual contact with the last soldier of the lead group. Note: Throughout this technique, the group commander positions himself at the rear of the fire group to have direct control (physically, if necessary) of his personnel. Other personnel in the fire group rotate the lead. Personnel rotate the lead to change magazines and prepare grenades. Rotating the lead provides constant suppressive fires down the trench and maintains the momentum of the attack as the section clears the trench system d. passes the lead group through the element securing the foothold. <p>7. The lead fire group starts clearing in the direction of movement:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. moves to the next corner, the second rifleman throws a grenade around the corner b. moves around the corner as a group after the grenade explodes, following the lead 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p style="text-align: center;">soldier to the next corner or intersection.</p> <p>8. The section commander follows behind the lead fire group:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. ensures that the trailing fire group moves up and is ready to pass the lead at his direction b. rotates the fire groups as necessary to keep the soldiers alert and to maintain the momentum of the attack c. requests indirect fires, if necessary, through the platoon commander d. ensures the trailing fire group secures intersections and marks the route within the trench as the section moves forward e. reports the progress of the clearing to the platoon commander. <p>9. The platoon commander controls and supports the progress of the clearing action:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. rotates sections to keep personnel alert and to maintain the momentum of the assault b. calls the platoon 2IC to forward ammunition resupply and to organize groups to move it into the trench c. ensures the platoon 2IC moves friendly forces into the trench only through the designated entry point d. reports to the company commander that the trench system is secured, or that his platoon is no longer able to continue clearing. 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

I4072 C - CLEAR BUNKER

ELEMENT: PLATOON

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

While moving as a part of a larger force, the platoon identifies the enemy in a bunker complex. The platoon is ordered to secure and clear a portion of the bunker complex. The platoon and enemy elements have indirect fire available.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon destroys the designated bunker by killing, capturing, or forcing the withdrawal of the enemy in the bunker.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>1. If engaged, the platoon reacts IAW BTS 5005, 'React to Contact / Direct Fire / Indirect Fire':</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. establishes a fire base with the section in contactb. the platoon commander, moves forward to link-up with the section commander of the lead section in contact:<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) uses a covered and concealed route(2) directs the platoon 2IC to move forward to provide a fire base(3) calls for and adjusts indirect fire on the enemy position. <p>2. If not engaged, the platoon commander makes an estimate of the situation to determine where the platoon can manoeuvre:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. identifies enemy bunkers, other supporting			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>positions, and any obstacles</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. determines the size of the enemy force (the number of enemy automatic weapons, the presence of any vehicles, and the employment of indirect fire are indicators of enemy strength) c. identifies a vulnerable flank of at least one bunker d. identifies a covered and concealed route to the flank of that bunker. <p>3. The platoon commander determines which bunker is to be assaulted first:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. directs one section not in contact to knock out the bunker using anti-armour weapons b. instructs the fire base to reposition the fire base to isolate the next bunker and continue suppressive fire c. accompanies assault section. <p>4. The fire base begins to suppress the enemy:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. destroys or suppresses enemy crew-served weapons first b. obscures the enemy position with smoke c. sustains suppressive fire d. shifts indirect fire as the platoon continues. <p>5. The assault section commander leads the assault section against the bunker:</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>a. moves along a covered and concealed route</p> <p>b. approaches the bunker from its blind side and does not mask the fire of the fire base</p> <p>c. constantly watches for other bunkers or enemy positions in support of it</p> <p>d. conducts the assault upon reaching the last covered and concealed position:</p> <p>(1) directs a fire group and the automatic rifleman to remain in place and add their fires to suppress the bunker (includes the use of SRAAW (L) and (H))</p> <p>(2) the section commander positions himself where he can best control his groups. On the section commander's signal, the fire group lifts fire or shifts fire to the opposite side of the bunker from the assaulting group's approach</p> <p>(3) the assault group continues to move forward to the blind side of the bunker. One soldier takes up a covered position near the exit, while the other soldier posts a grenade through an aperture</p> <p>(4) after the grenade detonates, the soldier covering the exit enters the bunker, firing short bursts, to destroy the enemy. (The soldier who posts the grenade should not be the first one to clear the bunker)</p> <p>(5) the section commander inspects the</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>bunker to ensure that it has been destroyed and marked. He reports, reorganizes as needed, and continues the mission.</p> <p>6. The platoon follows the success of the attack against the bunker:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. continues the attack of other bunkers as directed by the platoon commander b. shifts indirect fire as the platoon continues. <p>7. The platoon commander directs the repositioning of the fire base:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. continues to isolate and suppress the remaining bunkers b. maintains suppressive fire. <p>8. The platoon commander reorganizes the platoon to maintain the momentum of the attack:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. redesignates one of the fire base sections to move up, and seize or destroy the next bunker, or b. directs the assaulting section to continue and seek out the next bunker. Note: The platoon commander must consider the condition of the assaulting section (ammunition and exhaustion) and rotate sections as necessary c. ensures the assaulting section follows the same procedures listed above when knocking out the next bunker. <p>9. The platoon commander directs the actions of the</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>platoon once it has cleared its assigned portion of the bunker complex:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. reports to the company commander b. reorganizes as necessary IAW BTS 4305, 'Consolidate' c. passes another platoon from the company through to continue the attack as required d. prepares to continue the mission. 			

I4073 C/D - CONDUCT AIRMOBILE OPERATIONS**ELEMENT: PL / COY****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The platoon / company is required to conduct an airmobile operation in any phase of war. Both friendly and enemy forces have available indirect fire and close air support (CAS) available. Enemy air defence, NBC, and EW threats exist. Air parity exists.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon / company successfully plans and prepares to participate in an airmobile operation within the time specified in orders. Platoon / company personnel and equipment are prepared for movement at the time and place specified. The platoon / company loads the aircraft at the pick-up zone (PZ) and sufficient numbers of commanders, personnel, and key equipment arrive at the landing zone (LZ) in order to accomplish the mission.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon / company commander completes battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 , 'Battle Procedure.' 2. The platoon / company commander considers the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. action at the objective b. must conduct final coordination and briefings once the platoon / company and equipment marry-up with aircraft c. rehearsals must be conducted d. contingency plans for alternate action must be prepared: 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>(1) loss of aircraft enroute</p> <p>(2) deception</p> <p>(3) any part of the mission fails</p> <p>(4) reduction in available aircraft</p> <p>(5) aircraft are not able to use LZ(s)</p> <p>(6) requirement for troop extraction.</p> <p>3. The platoon / company commander organizes the load based on the allowable cargo loads as stated in higher orders:</p> <p>a. designates clear command relationships and chalk commanders</p> <p>b. maintains tactical integrity (keeps sections and teams together on the same aircraft)</p> <p>c. maintains self-sufficiency (keeps machine guns, anti-armour, and their crews on the same aircraft with ammunition and components)</p> <p>d. cross-loads key personnel and weapons among the aircraft</p> <p>e. designate and mark mission essential equipment, and rucksacks.</p> <p>4. The platoon / company commander briefs personnel on the helicopter landing formation:</p> <p>a. informs them of primary and alternate PZs, LZs, and RVs</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>b. informs them of the type of aircraft</p> <p>c. informs them of the allowable cargo load of aircraft</p> <p>d. informs them of the contingency plan for downed aircraft, for personnel on the aircraft and the remainder of the unit.</p> <p>5. The chalk commanders brief personnel in the chalk:</p> <p>a. inform them when to load and where to sit on the aircraft</p> <p>b. inform them of emergency procedures to be used in an emergency</p> <p>c. inform them of what to do when the aircraft lands.</p> <p>6. The platoon / company commander establishes the priority of loading:</p> <p>a. designates the priority of aircraft loads</p> <p>b. designates personnel to be bumped, if necessary, on each aircraft</p> <p>c. ensures bumped personnel, if any, are told to report to the straggler control point</p> <p>d. ensures that each aircraft is loaded so that dismounting personnel can react promptly and contribute to mission accomplishment.</p> <p>7. The platoon / company members prepare the equipment for loading IAW the platoon / company / unit SOP.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>8. The platoon / company members secure the assigned portion of the PZ while waiting for the order to load the aircraft:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. remain dispersed, covered, and concealed while awaiting the aircraft's arrival b. approach aircraft only after landing is completed c. approach aircraft, front or side, at double-time. WARNING: Never approach aircraft from the rear d. load at the time specified in the orders e. keep low when approaching and departing a helicopter, especially on slopes. <p>9. Loading:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. grouping and marshalling of the platoon / company occurs in the assembly area b. assault force must be grouped to achieve balance of force and concentration of fire, to land maximum combat power at H hour c. tactical cross-loading of key personnel and equipment must avoid critical operational losses from a single aircraft being destroyed d. platoon / company moves to the PZ in aircraft loads to meet the aircraft e. loading is completed as quickly as possible to reduce the vulnerability of the force f. fire support must be coordinated to mask 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>any movement during the operation.</p> <p>10. The commanders enforce safety measures IAW the platoon / company SOP:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. keep safety belts fastened when airborne (training) b. ensure weapons are on SAFE c. secure radio antennas d. secure hand grenades. <p>11. The commanders ensure the soldiers dismount the aircraft after it lands:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. prevent soldiers from jumping from a hovering helicopter until directed to do so by a member of the aircraft crew b. move the personnel out about 20 meters from the side of the aircraft and assume prone firing positions, facing outward. c. watch for enemy and wait for aircraft to leave d. move to the assigned positions to provide all-round security e. evacuate any casualties that occur, on departing aircraft. <p>12. Ground tactical phase:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the assault echelon secures the LZ if it is not already secured by pathfinders or fire support, or an alternate site must be 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>selected</p> <p>b. H hour begins at which time the first helicopter of the assault echelon lands</p> <p>c. sufficient troops arrive to accomplish the mission</p> <p>d. if an assault is required, it is done quickly to retain surprise</p> <p>e. use is made of fire support to neutralize all threats</p> <p>f. action at the objective is completed IAW the applicable BTS, usually a raid at the company level</p> <p>g. once the objective is secured, the platoon / company must either consolidate, prepare for the defence, conduct a link-up, or be extracted IAW orders.</p> <p>13. The platoon / company proceeds with its mission IAW orders.</p>			

I4074 B - CONDUCT SNIPER MISSION**ELEMENT: SNIPER TEAM****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The sniper team is given a specific mission (target criteria and priority), either by a supporting unit or by acting independently. The sniper team must move, observe, select, and destroy a target within 300-800m of the target area. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect and close air support (CAS) available.

TASK STANDARD:

The sniper team moves undetected along a specified route, arriving at a specified time and location. The team occupies a firing position undetected. The sniper team observes, selects, and destroys the target within two rounds. The sniper team sustains no casualties.

Sub-Tasks and Standards		Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1.	The sniper team selects the movement routes that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. avoids known enemy positions and obstacles b. offers cover and concealment c. takes advantage of difficult terrain, swamp and dense woods d. avoids natural lines of drift e. avoids footpaths, tracking traps, or built-up areas. 			
2.	The sniper team uses proper movement techniques and maintains operation security: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. moves slowly and cautiously 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>b. avoids making sounds.</p> <p>3. The sniper team maintains proper communication procedures:</p> <p>a. maintains radio silence</p> <p>b. uses visual signals.</p> <p>4. The sniper team identifies the following priority targets that will limit the enemy’s fighting ability:</p> <p>a. enemy sniper</p> <p>b. officers, both military and political</p> <p>c. NCMs</p> <p>d. reconnaissance team</p> <p>e. crew-served weapon personnel</p> <p>f. vehicle commanders and drivers</p> <p>g. communication personnel</p> <p>h. forward observers</p> <p>i. critical equipment such as optical sights or radios.</p> <p>5. The sniper team selects a final firing position that has:</p> <p>a. maximum fields of firing and observation of the target area</p> <p>b. maximum concealment from enemy observation</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. covered routes into and out of the position d. not closer than 300m to the target e. a natural or man-made obstacle, if available, between the sniper team and the target area <p>6. Maintain operations security by avoiding:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. roads and trails b. prominent features c. objects that make noise d. optical devices that may reflect light e. leaving a path f. tracking traps. <p>7. The sniper team occupies and operates from a position by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. using shadows b. using camouflage c. moves into the position undetected d. scans ahead and watches for overhead movement e. keeps the body outline low to the ground f. organizes the equipment g. establishes a system of observation and relief. 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>8. The sniper team selects the priority targets to be engaged:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. selects the target that is critical to the mission b. does not become a target while searching for or firing on an enemy target c. estimates range from the target between 300 to 800m d. engages the target or continues to observe. <p>9. The sniper team engages the target:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. adjusts for wind b. adjusts the scope on the target c. sniper fires d. watches the swirl and the strike of the round e. adjusts if necessary and engages again within five seconds f. engages subsequent targets if undetected. <p>10. The sniper team continues with the mission or executes an extraction plan.</p>			

DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS

4101 B/C/D - DEFEND

ELEMENT: SECT / PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The enemy is expected to attack mounted or dismounted with forces up to battalion strength supported by attack helicopters, indirect fire and close air support, but not until at least 18 hours after receipt of the battle group orders. The enemy can be reinforced with up to company size units. Enemy reconnaissance elements can be expected to gain information on the element's activities. The element is defending battle positions as part of a larger force area defence, or is assigned a separate sector in a mobile defence. The element will receive information provided by covering troops.

TASK STANDARD:

The element completes all preparations directed by the higher commander no later than the time specified in orders. The element decisively engages the enemy. The element destroys, blocks, delays, or canalizes the enemy into the destruction area IAW orders. The element denies and prevents penetration of specified boundaries or terrain.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The element commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 , 'Battle Procedure' and develops an outline defensive plan: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. identifies enemy avenues of approach and areas of weakness along each (exposure, canalization, slow movement, etc) b. the element's protective / tactical obstacles are positioned (refer to BTS 5013, 'Lay / 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>Lift a Protective Minefield²)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. contingencies are made to shift fire and forces to any route being used by the enemy (alternate positions and secondary arcs of fire) d. fire control measures and target priorities, are developed to allow fire to be shifted and massed (killing zones, etc) e. anti-armour positions are selected to provide flanking fire on enemy approaches, to provide cover and to allow covered entry/exit f. infantry positions are selected to block enemy mounted / dismounted approaches where infantry is not exposed to stand-off fire and is protected by obstacles from mounted assault g. obvious positions are avoided h. supporting plans are synchronized and coordinated i. control measures identifying sectors, boundaries, battle positions, killing zones and withdrawal routes are established j. read in conjunction with BTS 2002, 'Engage Targets with Main and Secondary Armament,' the element commander coordinates the direct and indirect fire plans with the higher commander, flanking units, and FC (if possible), including adjusted targets forward of positions (when adjustment will not jeopardize surprise) and predicted targets within and behind the 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>positions</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> k. the element commander tentatively sites obstacles which meet the required obstacle effect (eg. disrupt, turn, fix or block) within any directed obstacle groups assigned to the subunit l. the plan for the occupation of the positions is developed, work priorities, and allocation of field defence stores m. a security and counter-reconnaissance plan is developed. <p>2. The element occupies a hide IAW BTS 4309, 'Occupy Assembly Area / Harbour / Hide.'</p> <p>3. The element occupies the position:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. vehicles travel along pre-selected, covered and concealed routes b. vehicles do not stop until reaching the battle position guides c. primary weapons systems are positioned and fields of fire are established d. all-round security is established and the counter-reconnaissance plan is implemented e. OPs, air, and NBC sentries are deployed f. areas that cannot be observed are patrolled g. early warning devices are deployed h. stand-to IAW SOPs is conducted 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards		Eff	NPrac	Ineff
i.	positions are camouflaged using natural cover when available			
j.	alternate and subsequent positions are reconnoitred			
k.	the occupation is checked from the enemy point of view when possible			
l.	rehearsals are conducted and checked from suspected enemy approaches.			
4.	The commander checks the position:			
a.	subordinate commanders go to the front of their positions and reconnoitre the terrain to determine if the positions accomplish assigned tasks			
b.	positions are adjusted where required for more effective fields of fire			
c.	positions and fields of fire are checked for dead ground.			
5.	The element improves the defence:			
a.	alternate and secondary positions are improved			
b.	responsibility for overlapping fire on enemy avenues of approach is established			
c.	counterattack plans are developed and rehearsed			
d.	in area defence scenarios, communication trenches are dug between positions, if possible.			
6.	The commander sites the element vehicles and			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>echelon to provide effective support, and to be able to coordinate dumping of ammunition and field defence stores.</p> <p>7. The commander finalizes and integrates the direct and indirect fire plans:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the element fire plan incorporates sub-element submissions b. mutual support and concentration of fire is achieved c. the element is tied-in with adjacent elements d. a copy of the fire plan is provided to all subordinate commanders. <p>8. The commander coordinates with adjacent, supporting, co-located and higher units:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the locations of primary, alternate and secondary battle and firing positions are coordinated b. information on routes into and out of battle position and routes to the alternate and subsequent positions is exchanged c. indirect fire targets and control measures are identified and coordinated d. the locations of OPs and patrol routes, along with dead ground between elements and how it is to be covered are exchanged e. necessary CEOI information is exchanged f. interlocking and overlapping direct fire is 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>identified.</p>			
<p>9. The element emplaces obstacles IAW the barrier plan:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. if authorization is not already granted, the commander requests and receives clearance to lay protective minefields b. in built-up areas, obstacles are emplaced to deny approaches underground, through and between buildings, and over rooftops c. the element covers obstacles by observation and direct fire d. the closure of lanes through obstacles is planned e. tactical minefield records are forwarded to higher HQ. 			
<p>10. The element stockpiles ammunition and supplies:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. sufficient field defence stores are stockpiled b. the locations of stockpiles are reported to all sub-elements c. the evacuation or destruction of stockpiled supplies is planned. 			
<p>11. Element conducts defensive operations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. IAW commander's intent and mission statement b. rest and sustainment activities are planned for continuous operations c. continuous communications with the higher 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>CP are maintained and reports are submitted IAW SOPs</p> <p>d. enemy is detected and action taken IAW the counter-reconnaissance plan</p> <p>e. enemy activity is reported to the higher CP IAW SOPs.</p> <p>12. The element defends against an assault:</p> <p>a. synchronizes direct and indirect fire to complete the assigned mission, separating tanks from infantry fighting vehicles as a priority if defending against a mounted assault</p> <p>b. executes the barrier plan to impede and canalize the enemy</p> <p>c. employs smoke to blind enemy observation</p> <p>d. engages vehicles with primary weapon systems and anti-armour weapons</p> <p>e. the platoon commander moves elements between primary, alternate and secondary positions to complete the assigned mission</p> <p>f. anti-armour weapons engage targets by priority IAW orders</p> <p>g. tanks are engaged by enfilade fire whenever possible.</p> <p>13. The element consolidates IAW BTS 4305 'Consolidate.'</p> <p>14. The element continues to defend IAW the assigned mission.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

4102 C/D - GUARD A RESERVED DEMOLITION

ELEMENT: PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon / company has been given an order to provide a reserved demolition guard at a critical site in the Authorized Commander's area. (Since reserved demolitions are not normally established at battle group level, the platoon / company will not necessarily establish the demolition guard in its parent battle group's sector). The enemy force will consist of a reinforced tank or motor rifle battalion and / or a heliborne force, each with the specific mission of seizing the reserved demolition site. The enemy will not engage the platoon / company until at least 18 hours after receipt of orders. The platoon / company has been provided with a completed DND 913 Demolition Order. The platoon / company has up to an engineer platoon / section under TACOM to both prepare the demolition to State 1 (SAFE) and to provide the demolition firing party. The engineers have sufficient quantities of explosives and accessories to prepare the demolition. Refugees, stragglers, enemy saboteurs, and the international press are present in the area of operations.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon / company prevents the enemy from seizing the demolition site intact, or destroying it prematurely, until ordered to execute the reserved demolition orders.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon / company commander, as the demolition guard commander, conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 , 'Battle Procedure,' and in particular: a. plans a continuous all around defence: (1) positions sufficient combat power on the enemy side of the reserved demolition to occupy roadblocks on			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>approaches leading to the area</p> <p>(2) positions sufficient combat power on and around the reserved demolition to defend it and the demolitions</p> <p>(3) positions sufficient combat power on the friendly side of the reserved demolition in locations where they can provide support</p> <p>(4) plan for a counterattack</p> <p>b. incorporates any attached units into the defensive plan (eg. air defence, MPs, etc)</p> <p>c. plans for OPs and patrols in order to provide early warning</p> <p>d. determines the locations of all potential LZs/DZs in the area; considers them from the enemy perspective, and decides how to either deny them or use them to support the plan</p> <p>e. plans for the manoeuvre of units and refugees (eg. traffic control points (TCP), holding areas, roadblocks, escorts, searches)</p> <p>f. establishes control points on both sides of the reserved demolition to monitor, control, and inform the demolition guard commander on the passage of friendly units. Refer to BTS 5009, 'Establish a Roadblock / Checkpoint.'</p> <p>2. The platoon / company commander and the FOO coordinate direct and indirect fire support for the</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>mission.</p> <p>3. The platoon / company prepares for the demolition guard task:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. sets mines and obstacles IAW the commander’s plan to disrupt and block enemy movement to include enemy divers b. marks all lanes through the obstacles c. ensures establishment of demolition firing points, a main and an alternate on the friendly side, an alternate on the enemy side and others as required by the enemy situation, ground, resources, time available, etc d. plan and conduct rehearsals. <p>4. The platoon / company commander coordinates the demolition guard:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. compares individual copy of the DND 913 Demolition Order with that of the demolition firing party commander to ensure it is correct and complete b. exchanges information with adjacent commanders on OP locations, patrols, unit signals, enemy routes into the area, terrain and facilities available in the area/lanes through the obstacles c. places recovery and evacuation assets near and on the friendly side of the reserved demolition to assist in keeping route clear d. prepares a succession of command for the demolition guard and ensures that a 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>succession of command is also prepared for the firing party</p> <p>e. ensures communications are maintained with the Authorized Commander.</p> <p>5. The platoon / company executes the demolition guard mission:</p> <p>a. defends the reserved demolition</p> <p>b. controls the flow of vehicles and personnel to ensure the reserved demolition does not become congested</p> <p>c. moves units and refugees to designated holding areas to prevent massing at the reserved demolition.</p> <p>6. Demolition guard commander directs demolition of the reserved demolition upon receipt of the order:</p> <p>a. notifies the firing party commander of the receipt of the order</p> <p>b. warns friendly units in the area of imminent firing</p> <p>c. withdraws elements to the friendly side before firing. (The commander may leave some elements on the enemy side until after firing. These elements may be required to continue to provide security until the demolition is fired. The platoon / company commander must plan for their withdrawal after detonation, eg. by assault boat)</p> <p>d. gives order to fire to the firing party commander</p> <p>e. executes misfire procedures if the</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>demolitions fail to fire</p> <p>f. the firing party commander inspects the reserved demolition to ensure it is completely destroyed and advises the demolition guard commander accordingly</p> <p>g. reports the completion of the mission to the Authorized Commander.</p>			

4103 C - DEFEND IN A BUILT-UP AREA**ELEMENT: PLATOON****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The platoon is operating as a part of a larger defending force in a built-up area and is preparing to defend against a mounted enemy force, which has armour in support. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire support available. The platoon will have the required support weapons, appropriate defensive stores and specialized equipment to carry out its task. This will normally include Engineer / Pioneer support and may include the support of tanks. Appropriate rules of engagement are in effect. Further mission-specific conditions may be applied as deemed relevant.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon completes all required defensive preparations within the time specified in the operation order and operations security is maintained throughout. The platoon successfully defeats, blocks delays or forces the withdrawal of the enemy force (of proportionate size) in accordance with the commander's intent. The platoon prevents any significant penetration within its boundaries, which will threaten the higher commander's plan and impede freedom of action. Rules of engagement are adhered to.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 , 'Battle Procedure,' with particular attention to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. conducting a detailed terrain analysis, with due consideration given to the three-dimensional aspects of applicable criteria including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) avenues of approach 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
(2) fields of fire and observation			
(3) obstacles			
(4) cover and concealment			
(5) manoeuvre and mobility			
(6) fire hazard			
(7) command and control			
(8) key terrain			
b. ensuring that effective command, control and coordination measures are established			
c. providing for adequate protection, dispersion, mutual support and early warning of fighting positions			
d. establishing killing zones, open fire policy and engagement priorities in accordance with the operation order and / or commander's intent			
e. establishing the requirement for, and provision of barriers and obstacles			
f. establishing a counter-attack plan			
g. establishing a withdrawal plan in accordance with the commander's intent			
h. conducting liaison with flanking elements specifically to coordinate and / or establish responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach			
i. providing for ammunition resupply			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>j. providing for the handling of casualties, prisoners of war, and non-combatants.</p> <p>2. The platoon commander establishes security of the area and positions the sub-elements including support weapons. Specific arcs responsibility, including alternates, are assigned to element and support weapon commanders.</p> <p>3. The platoon command post is positioned in a covered and concealed area and an observation post is established where the platoon commander can observe, control and influence the battle.</p> <p>4. The platoon commander ensures that the occupation and development of the defensive position / strong point is completed on time and in accordance with the operation order, special consideration is given to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. establishing security through maintenance of an appropriate state of alert, observation, early warning and patrolling procedures b. establishing the priority of work c. establishing line communications particularly with observation posts d. ensuring adequate protection of each fighting position e. ensuring that weapons and positions are sited in depth and are mutually supporting f. ensuring that sufficient combat supplies are stocked and adequately stored. <p>5. The platoon commander ensures that barriers are constructed and obstacles are emplaced to deny the enemy access to streets, underground passages and</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>buildings, including rooftops, barriers, and obstacles must be covered by fire and / or observation.</p> <p>6. The platoon commander develops the counter-attack plan. A reserve force is identified, task-organized and armed appropriately. Considerations include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. immediate counter-attack of enemy penetration of strong point(s) before the enemy becomes established b. identification and maintenance of routes including marking as necessary c. day and night rehearsals d. fighting position reinforcement options. <p>7. The withdrawal plan is developed IAW the commander's intent. Considerations include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. plans for the destruction of buildings and / or denial of equipment in accordance with the operation order b. identification and maintenance of routes including marking as necessary c. order of march d. day and night rehearsals. <p>8. The platoon commander plans and coordinates indirect fires to support the platoon defence. Likely enemy avenues of approach, barriers, obstacles, counterattack and withdrawal plans are taken into account. Defensive fire targets are registered as security, ammunition and authority permit.</p> <p>9. The defensive battle is conducted IAW the</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>operation order and commander's intent. Actions include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. maintenance of positive command and control by element commanders b. maintenance of communications with the higher headquarters including the provision of situation reports when warranted and / or requested c. use of direct and indirect fire to separate the enemy fighting vehicles from dismounted personnel providing security for the vehicles in accordance with the open fire policy and engagement priorities. Positive control of fire is maintained d. execution of the barrier plan to impede and canalize enemy vehicles and personnel into killing zones e. employment of smoke to blind vehicle crews f. movement of sub-elements, under the direction of the platoon commander, between primary and alternate positions to complete the destruction or expulsion of the enemy force g. execution of the defensive fire plan to suppress, block or destroy dismounted enemy troop formations h. commitment of the reserve to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) exploit success or an enemy weakness (2) support a forward element through 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p style="text-align: center;">manoeuvre</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (3) assume the mission of another element (4) defeat, block or repel any enemy penetration (5) reinforce a fighting position(s) (6) execution of sustainment activities for continuous operations. <p>10. Consolidation takes place following an enemy assault IAW BTS 4305, 'Consolidate' with emphasis on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the chain of command is confirmed and / or established b. the platoon status and tactical situation are reported to the higher HQ IAW SOPs c. fighting positions, barriers and obstacles are restored as necessary d. security and patrolling activities resume e. casualties are treated and evacuated f. ammunition is redistributed and resupply is requested as required g. the defence continues until a change of mission is received. 			

4103 D - DEFEND IN A BUILT-UP AREA**ELEMENT: COMPANY****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The company is operating as a part of a larger defending force in a built-up area. The enemy is expected to attack with mounted and / or dismounted forces up to battalion strength, supported by indirect fire and close air support. The company will have the required support weapons, appropriate defensive stores and specialized equipment to carry out its task. This will normally include Engineer / Pioneer support and may include the support of tanks. Appropriate rules of engagement are in effect. Further mission-specific conditions may be applied as deemed relevant.

TASK STANDARD:

The company completes all required defensive preparations within the time specified in the operation order and operations security is maintained throughout. The company successfully defeats, blocks, delays or forces the withdrawal of the enemy force in accordance with the commander's intent. The company prevents and significant penetration within its boundaries which will threaten the higher commander's plan and impede freedom of action. The company retains sufficient combat power to remain effective for follow-on operations. Rules of engagement are adhered to.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The company commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 , 'Battle Procedure,' with particular attention to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. conducting a detailed terrain analysis, with due consideration give to the three-dimensional aspects of applicable criteria including: 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) avenues of approach (2) fields of fire and observation (3) obstacles (4) cover and concealment (5) manoeuvre and mobility (6) fire hazard (7) command and control (8) key terrain b. establishing effective command, control and coordination measures including sectors, report lines, boundaries and coordinating points c. selecting positions which address the most dangerous threat and which exploit enemy weaknesses d. Providing for adequate protection, depth, dispersion, mutual support and early warning of defensive position / strong points(s) e. establishing killing zones, open fire policy and engagement priorities in accordance with the operation order and / or commander's intent f. establishing the surveillance and target acquisition plan g. establishing the requirement for, and 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>provision of barriers and obstacles</p> <p>h. establishing a counter-attack plan</p> <p>i. establishing a withdrawal plan in accordance with the commander's intent</p> <p>j. conducting liaison with flanking elements specifically to coordinate and / or establish responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach</p> <p>k. providing for adequate resupply arrangements</p> <p>l. providing for the handling of casualties, prisoners of war, and non-combatants.</p> <p>2. The company establishes defence of the area. The company commander positions the platoons, integral support weapons and attached elements, and assigns specific arcs of responsibility including alternates.</p> <p>3. The company command post is positioned in a covered and concealed area and an observation post is established where the company commander can observe, control and influence the battle.</p> <p>4. The company commander ensures that the occupation and development of the defensive position / strong point(s) is completed on time and IAW the operation order. Special consideration is given to:</p> <p>a. establishing security through maintenance of an appropriate state of alert, observation, early warning and patrolling procedures</p> <p>b. establishing the priority or work</p> <p>c. establishing line communications between</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>the sub-elements and the company command post</p> <p>d. ensuring adequate protection of each fighting position</p> <p>e. ensuring that positions are sited in depth and are mutually supporting</p> <p>f. ensuring that sufficient combat supplies are stocked and adequately stored.</p> <p>5. The company commander ensures that barriers are constructed and obstacles are emplaced to deny the enemy access to streets, underground passages and buildings, including rooftop. Barriers and obstacles must be covered by fire and / or observation.</p> <p>6. The company commander develops the counter-attack plan. A reserve force is identified, task-organized and armed appropriately. Considerations include:</p> <p>a. immediate counter-attack of enemy penetration of strong point(s) before the enemy becomes established</p> <p>b. fighting position reinforcement options</p> <p>c. identification and maintenance of routes including marking as necessary</p> <p>d. day and night rehearsals.</p> <p>7. The company may be tasked as the centrally located mobile reserve of the higher unit. Considerations in this case include:</p> <p>a. plans for counter-attack in assigned priority</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. plans for reinforcement options c. identification and maintenance of routes including marking as necessary d. coordination with adjacent units regarding the exchange of plans and intended use of routes e. day and night rehearsals. 			
<p>8. The withdrawal plan is developed IAW the commander's intent. Considerations include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. plans for the destruction of buildings and / or denial of equipment IAW the operation order b. identification and maintenance of routes including marking as necessary c. order of march d. day and night rehearsals. 			
<p>9. The company commander plans and coordinates indirect fires to support the company defence. Likely enemy avenues of approach, barriers, obstacles, counter-attack and withdrawal plans are taken into account. Defensive fire targets are registered as security, ammunition and authority permit.</p>			
<p>10. The defensive battle is conducted IAW the operation order and commander's intent. Actions include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. maintenance of positive command and control by element commanders b. maintenance of communications with the higher HQ including the provision of 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>situation reports when warranted and / or requested</p> <p>c. use of direct and indirect fire to separate the enemy fighting vehicles from dismounted personnel providing security for the vehicles IAW the open fire policy and engagement priorities. Positive control of fire is maintained</p> <p>d. execution of the barrier plan to impede and canalize enemy vehicles and personnel into killing zones</p> <p>e. employment of smoke to blind vehicle crews</p> <p>f. movement of sub-elements, under the direction of the company commander, between primary and alternate positions to complete the destruction or expulsion of the enemy force</p> <p>g. execution of the defensive fire plan to suppress, block or destroy dismounted enemy troop formations</p> <p>h. commitment of the reserve to:</p> <p>(1) exploit success or an enemy weakness</p> <p>(2) support a forward element through manoeuvre</p> <p>(3) assume the mission of another element</p> <p>(4) defeat, block or repel and enemy</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p style="text-align: center;">penetration</p> <p>(5) reinforce a fighting position(s)</p> <p>(6) execution of sustainment activities for continuous operations.</p> <p>11. Consolidation takes place following an enemy assault IAW BTS 4305, 'Consolidate' with emphasis on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the chain of command is confirmed and / or re-established b. the company status and tactical situation are reported to the higher HQ IAW SOPs c. defensive positions, barriers and obstacles are restored as necessary d. security and patrolling activities resume e. casualties are treated and evacuated f. resupply is carried out as required g. the defence continues until a change of mission is received. 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

DELAY

4201 C/D - DELAY

ELEMENT: PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon / company is part of a larger force and participates in a mission to delay. The higher commander's intent is to obtain maximum delay of the enemy while maintaining freedom of manoeuvre. The enemy is up to a motor rifle battalion in size, and is supported by air and indirect fire resources. The delaying force will have 12 hours to deploy and prepare for the operation. The orders will include the minimum length of time the platoon must delay for, or the percentage of the force that must be preserved, the break clean line and the handover line. The platoon will have access to information provided by covering troops. This BTS should be read in conjunction with BTS [3002](#), 'Screen' and BTS [4202](#), 'Guard.'

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon / company delays the enemy for the specified time within the designated boundaries, or sustains no more than the designated percent casualties. The platoon / company maintains contact with the enemy and does not become decisively engaged.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon / company commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 , 'Battle Procedure' and in particular: a. identifies initial and subsequent positions b. includes platoon / company level coordinate measures (phase lines, etc) c. identifies general routes between delay			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>positions</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. locates and develops a series of platoon / company delay positions e. conducts reconnaissance and marks general routes between delay positions f. may include offensive operations g. develops the fire plan h. plans obstacles to slow the enemy advance. <p>2. Logistics for the delay is planned:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. plan evacuation routes b. plan dumping of fuel and ammunition in designated positions c. promulgate recovery priorities and criteria for abandonment of vehicles. <p>3. The platoon / company prepares to conduct the delay:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. prepares / marks routes and subsequent positions b. conducts reconnaissance and rehearsals c. constructs a series of defensive positions to fall back to d. dumps supplies, ammunition and fuel in subsequent defensive positions e. establishes a series of obstacles at critical choke points and killing zones 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards		Eff	NPrac	Ineff
f.	evacuates non-essential personnel, supplies and equipment (refer to BTS 5008 , ‘Deny Equipment and Supplies’)			
g.	destroys non-essential supplies and equipment, which cannot be evacuated (refer to BTS 5008 , ‘Deny Equipment and Supplies’).			
4.	The platoon / company conducts the delay:			
a.	occupies initial delay positions IAW platoon orders			
b.	complies with all control measures and time constraints specified in higher orders			
c.	anti-armour and weapon systems engage the enemy			
d.	the fire plan is implemented			
e.	engaged section(s) disengage from the enemy only on order or if IAW the platoon / company commander’s intent			
f.	the platoon / company commander makes timely decisions on disengagement to avoid parts of his force being cut off and destroyed			
g.	disengaged section(s) / platoon(s) move to subsequent delay positions			
h.	the remainder of the platoon / company provides fire support for the disengaging element			
i.	the delaying action continues until the platoon / company reaches the final delay			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>position or the mission is altered by the higher HQ</p> <p>j. the platoon / company is not decisively engaged or bypassed</p> <p>k. the required amount of delay is imposed.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

4202 C/D - GUARD

ELEMENT: PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon / company is part of a larger force and participates in a guard operation for a specified period of time. It is deployed forward of a designated phase line. A reconnaissance of the area between the main body and the guard force has been conducted. The guard force is in place. Enemy reconnaissance elements are trying to locate the main body. Both the enemy and guard force have indirect fire support available. This BTS should be read in conjunction with BTS [3002](#), 'Screen,' and BTS [4201](#), 'Delay.'

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon / company protects the main body from surprise and direct fire from the enemy. It causes premature deployment and attrition of attacking enemy forces. It does not withdraw to subsequent positions without higher authority. The platoon / company inflicts maximum casualties on the enemy reconnaissance elements, and does not become decisively engaged.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon / company commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 , 'Battle Procedure,' and develops a plan for the guard: a. the platoon / company commander develops control measures in support of the platoon / company's guard task b. defensive positions are planned to block the most likely approaches c. the defence or delay is organized using the advantages of terrain and weapon systems			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>capabilities</p> <p>d. the use of artillery and smoke is planned and requested.</p> <p>2. The platoon / company maintains continuous observation over its area of operation, and engages the enemy:</p> <p>a. platoon / company elements observe in their designated sectors</p> <p>b. OPs report all observed enemy activity IAW SOPs or orders</p> <p>c. night observation devices are used during limited visibility</p> <p>d. aggressive patrolling is conducted</p> <p>e. causes enemy to deploy early</p> <p>f. subjects the enemy to heavy casualties</p> <p>g. destroys enemy reconnaissance</p> <p>h. is prepared to assist in a forward passage of lines for a counterattack force from the main body IAW higher orders</p> <p>i. denies the enemy the ability to engage the main body with direct fire</p> <p>j. withdraws to successive positions on order from higher authority</p> <p>k. provides the main body with reaction time and determines the enemy's disposition</p> <p>l. continually updates the main body on the</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
enemy situation. 3. The platoon / company continually updates the main body on the enemy situation.			

TRANSITIONAL OPERATIONS

4301 B/C/D - ADVANCE TO CONTACT

ELEMENT: SECT / PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The element is part of a higher unit, and is ordered to conduct an advance to contact. Contact with the enemy has been broken, or has not yet been established.

TASK STANDARD:

The element advances no later than the time specified in orders. Once contact is made, the element maintains contact and takes action IAW orders. The element maintains sufficient combat power to conduct follow-on operations IAW the commander's intent.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The element commander plans for the advance: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. battle procedure IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure' and prepare sections for combat IAW Section Battle Drill One - 'Prepare for Battle' b. maintain operations security IAW BTS 3001, 'Maintain Operations Security' c. considers the time available, speed of advance, enemy situation, and security of the combat team to determine the appropriate formation and grouping d. addresses PIRs e. coordinates the plan with supporting and / 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>or adjacent elements / units as required</p> <p>f. conduct reconnaissance and post guides along the route to the LD, as required and if authorized in the Op O</p> <p>g. ensures or determines that LD is secured.</p> <p>2. The element establishes an assembly area, if applicable, IAW BTS 4309 ‘Occupy Assembly Area / Harbour / Hide.’</p> <p>3. The element crosses the LD at H hr and begins the advance to contact:</p> <p>a. initiates movement on the commander’s order</p> <p>b. moves in the formation designated in the order</p> <p>c. moves IAW BTS 4308 ‘Move Tactically.’</p> <p>4. The element commander directs the element in the advance to contact, selecting the movement technique and formations (mounted or dismounted) based on the likelihood of enemy contact.</p> <p>5. Once contact is made, sections / platoons take immediate action IAW BTS 5005, ‘React to Contact / Direct Fire / Indirect Fire,’ or action is taken IAW Platoon Battle Drill One, ‘Reaction to Section coming under effective Enemy Fire.’</p> <p>6. The element takes subsequent action IAW its assigned mission until the enemy is destroyed, or until ordered to do otherwise.</p>			

4302 C/D - PASSAGE OF LINES**ELEMENT: PL / COY****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The element is required to conduct, or assist in, a passage of lines as either the moving or in-place force. Orders have specified a time when the passage is to be completed. For a forward passage of lines, the force in place will secure the line of departure (LD).

TASK STANDARD:

As the moving force, the element: moves all personnel and equipment through the in-place force no later than the specified time; does not sustain casualties from friendly fire or obstacles; and, does not disrupt the in-place force.

As the in-place force, the element: supports the moving unit in completing the passage of lines within the time specified in orders; and, provides security to ensure neither unit is surprised by the enemy.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The commander receives orders and immediately begins planning and coordinating for a passage of lines: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. the moving and in-place force commanders or their representatives meet and arrange for a time and location for coordinating the passage b. the commander or representative coordinates a reconnaissance. 2. The commanders or their representatives exchange pertinent information, including: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. unit identification 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. size of the unit c. timings d. area of operation e. terrain information f. known or suspected enemy locations g. likely enemy killing zones h. latest enemy activity i. detailed information on friendly positions j. obstacle locations k. fire plan details l. support the in-place force can provide, such as fire support, guides, communications and a reaction force m. CEOIs n. locations of assembly areas, coordination and passage points and attack positions. 			
<p>3. The moving and in-place forces coordinate the passage of lines:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. reconnoitre as far forward as the tactical situation permits in order to view the area forward of the FLOT (forward line own troops) b. discuss the moving force's mission and plan 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. confirm recognition signals d. identify guides and traffic control measures e. discuss security measures f. establish fire support responsibilities and fire plans g. confirm the process and signals for the transfer of responsibility and action on enemy contact h. exchange information on lanes and routes i. exchange information on battle handover lines j. exchange information on control measures. 			
<p>4. Both commanders ensure their reconnaissance and other activities do not reveal the operation to the enemy:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. in-place force activities continue with normal routine throughout the passage b. movement is rapid and continues through the passage lane. 			
<p>5. Preparations for passage of lines:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. in-place force designates locations for contingency halts b. in-place force ensures obstacles are removed from the passage lanes / routes, and lanes / routes are marked c. the moving force commander issues a contingency plan before moving out to 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>make final coordination arrangements.</p> <p>6. Both commanders brief their forces:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. confirm chain of command and control measures which will affect it b. provide guidance on actions to be taken on contact c. establish succession of command and conduct back-briefs to ensure subordinate commanders understand the orders d. provide timings and any limits or restrictions on actions. <p>7. Forward passage of lines:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the moving force commander or his representative completes the final coordination with the in-place force commander or his representative b. the moving force begins movement on time and utilizes the attack position only if necessary c. both commanders make timely decisions during the passage and facilitate battle handover d. moving force elements link up with guides and are led through the passage to the release point(s) e. the moving force moves forward through the release point(s) f. guides identify and account for all elements 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>passing through the check points and release point(s)</p> <p>g. sections / platoons are counted through the release point(s) by a moving force representative</p> <p>h. moving force representatives confirm passwords and tell the guides the number of elements in each section / platoon and how long to wait at the release point(s)</p> <p>i. movement is continuous throughout the passage</p> <p>j. moving force representative remains at the release point(s) until the commander indicates that he will not have to withdraw</p> <p>k. when moving force elements have used separate routes, the moving force may reform by linking up</p> <p>l. the moving force continues the mission.</p> <p>8. Prepare for rearward passage of lines:</p> <p>a. the commander of the in-place force designates the contact point for coordination</p> <p>b. at the prescribed time, liaison parties from the two forces meet and exchange information.</p> <p>9. Liaison teams coordinate and verify information:</p> <p>a. exchange enemy information</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. exchange recognition signals, and CEOIs c. make provision for and place guides d. estimate time of main body arrival and the number and type of vehicles to pass e. coordinates time or event of battle handover f. exchange information on minefields and other obstacles g. coordinate primary and alternate routes h. exchange information on supporting direct / indirect fire. 			
<p>10. Conducts a rearward passage of lines:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. after verification that the passage points are occupied, liaison parties make contact at each passage point b. the moving force passes in order of A echelon, combat support elements, and sections / platoons c. additional combat power may be given to the in-place force in the form of any of the element's attachments or integral specialist elements d. the in-place force is notified that friendly forces are at the battle handover line and are en route to the passage point(s) (the battle handover line should be far enough forward to allow the moving unit to move into column, yet close enough to permit support by units along the forward edge of 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>the battle area (FEBA))</p> <p>e. the moving force redeploys into column formation, displays the proper visual signals and orients weapons toward the enemy</p> <p>f. the moving force moves through the passage point(s) to the assembly area without stopping</p> <p>g. the in-place force fires only when positive enemy identification is made</p> <p>h. disabled vehicles are self-recovered, destroyed in place or assisted by other elements, depending on the tactical situation</p> <p>i. in-place forces provide medical assistance, emergency replenishment of combat supplies, and recovery and maintenance assistance if required</p> <p>j. the moving force moves rapidly, minimizing exposure time</p> <p>k. the moving force reports to the in-place force any tactical information concerning the in-place commander's area of responsibility.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

4304 D - BYPASS

ELEMENT: COMPANY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The company performs a tactical move as part of transitional operation. The company encounters an enemy motor rifle platoon (+) in a strongpoint as part of a security force, or as a flank or rear guard. The superior commander's concept requires rapid continuation of the movement and permits bypassing. Bypass routes are available.

TASK STANDARD:

The company bypasses the enemy. The enemy is fixed. It cannot manoeuvre against the company, withdraw, or cause sufficient casualties to prevent the company from carrying on its mission. Less than two platoons are used to fix the enemy.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon commander issues a radio order: a. as soon as possible after initial contact b. designates one or more platoons to fix the enemy. If more than one platoon is designated, an overall commander is appointed c. assigns bypass routes that provide protection from enemy anti-armour weapons and an order of march for each route d. plans reconnaissance and security of the bypass routes before commitment of the main body e. specifies instructions to the fixing force to rejoin the company on a signal or event, or			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p style="text-align: center;">to become attached to follow-on units.</p> <p>2. The company fixes the enemy with the designated fixing force to prevent manoeuvre against the company, withdrawal or effective direct fire on the company.</p> <p>3. Company (-) bypasses:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. company (-) bypasses b. bypass is completed within a specified timeframe c. company resumes tactical movement d. the enemy force remains fixed. <p>4. The fixing force passes information to the follow-on force designated to destroy the enemy, to include a recommended fire base, assembly area and attack position.</p> <p>5. The fixing force links-up with the follow on force, or rejoins the company IAW the orders.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

4305 C/D - CONSOLIDATE

ELEMENT: PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon / company has assaulted and seized an objective, or repelled an attack. Enemy forces have withdrawn and / or remain on the objective, but are scattered and disorganized. Note that this BTS is an evaluation tool for Section Battle Drill Seven and Platoon Battle Drill Three, which could be performed under a section, platoon, or company setting.

TASK STANDARD:

All remaining enemy resistance on or close to the objective is destroyed or captured. The platoon / company is prepared to repel an enemy counterattack. Command and control are maintained, security is established, key positions are filled, casualties are treated and evacuated, damaged equipment is recovered and ammunition and supplies are redistributed and replenished. The platoon / company is prepared to continue operations.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. Section Battle Drill Seven and Platoon Battle Drill Three - 'Consolidation' - are executed. 2. The platoon commander develops courses of action: a. evaluates the overall situation b. evaluates dangers on the objective c. determines the threat potential to the platoon d. determines when consolidation must be complete in order to prepare for a possible			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>counterattack.</p> <p>3. The platoon sweeps the objective, and captures or destroys all enemy.</p> <p>4. The platoon commander maintains command and control:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. maintains communications with the higher HQ and adjacent units b. develops a course of action c. coordinates the platoon's actions with adjacent units. <p>5. The platoon establishes a hasty defensive position:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. designated anti-armour weapons and personnel occupy firing positions b. OPs are established c. the platoon commander and FC update the defensive fire target list d. platoon emplaces protective minefield and other protective obstacles e. platoon commander develops engagement criteria f. platoon sets trip flares and other alarms. <p>6. The platoon accounts for personnel:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. sections determine WIAs, MIAs and KIAs b. sections report personnel status to the platoon HQ 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>c. the platoon reports its personnel status to the higher HQ.</p> <p>7. Section commanders report status to the platoon commander:</p> <p>a. report casualties and personnel status</p> <p>b. report ammunition and POL status</p> <p>c. report vehicle status</p> <p>d. report communications equipment status</p> <p>e. request items for resupply as required.</p> <p>8. The platoon replaces key losses:</p> <p>a. utilizes personnel from disabled vehicles</p> <p>b. ensures all command positions are filled</p> <p>c. ensures key weapons systems are manned</p> <p>d. submits requests for replacement personnel.</p> <p>9. The platoon initiates evacuation:</p> <p>a. locates all casualties</p> <p>b. recovers disabled vehicles</p> <p>c. forwards intelligence information and handles PWs.</p> <p>10. The platoon redistributes and replenishes supplies.</p> <p>11. The platoon commander prepares to continue the mission:</p> <p>a. makes a map and visual reconnaissance of</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>the terrain between the current position and the next objective</p> <p>b. issues necessary orders or warning orders as necessary.</p> <p>12. The platoon prepares to continue operations:</p> <p>a. performs maintenance checks and emergency repairs</p> <p>b. refuels and rearms</p> <p>c. marks all obstacle breaches and hazards to facilitate the movement of follow on forces.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

4306 C/D - INFILTRATE

ELEMENT: PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The infiltration is part of a higher commander's concept of operations and plan. The platoon / company must move by stealth from its assembly area to its attack position in an enemy occupied area. It may be required to assault and hold its position until a link-up can be effected, or it may be directed to assault and subsequently withdraw (raid).

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon / company moves through the enemy area avoiding decisive engagement and reaches the objective without the enemy determining the size of the friendly force.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon / company commander plans the infiltration: a. selected covered primary and alternate routes b. establishes checkpoints c. designates RVs that are easily identifiable d. routes avoid built-up areas and areas occupied or covered (or suspected to be occupied and covered) by enemy elements e. establishes sequence of movement f. coordinates indirect fire along infiltration routes g. plans indirect fire on known or suspected			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>enemy positions.</p> <p>2. The platoon / company commander selects infiltration method and routes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the platoon / company conducts reconnaissance patrols to find gaps, weaknesses, routes and positions in the enemy area b. coordinates for passage of lines with forward unit, if necessary c. coordinates with units having element forward of the FEBA, as required d. organizes to facilitate control of the infiltration with the largest elements that can move undetected. Maintains unit and weapon system integrity e. commanders assign lanes and release points to subordinate elements f. decide on specific infiltration routes and methods g. rehearse infiltration methods (using terrain models and walk-through if possible) h. tailor soldier's loads to the minimum required for the operation i. make contingency plans for contact with all or part of the infiltrating force before, during and after infiltration j. designate primary and alternate link-up points for subordinate elements. <p>3. The platoon / company commander designates the</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>methods of communication:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. considers enemy electronic warfare capabilities in selecting methods b. arranges predetermined signals, minimizing radio traffic c. uses visual signals or messengers to relay information as much as possible. <p>4. The platoon / company infiltrates:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. maintains communication during movement b. breaks down into infiltrating elements at designated release points c. takes advantage of gaps and weaknesses in enemy positions, limited visibility, bad weather and broken terrain affording cover and concealment d. avoids enemy contact. If contact is made, avoids becoming decisively engaged, breaks contact and continues movement to the platoon / company RV e. ignores ineffective enemy fire f. maintains dispersion and strict noise, light and camouflage discipline g. enforces radio IAW orders h. elements use artillery and related battlefield noise to mask movement i. elements avoid enemy contact by halting and hiding 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>j. elements engage the enemy primarily with indirect fire.</p> <p>5. Action at the objective is taken IAW higher commander's orders.</p> <p>6. The platoon / company links up IAW BTS 4307, 'Link-up.'</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

4307 C - LINK-UP

ELEMENT: PLATOON

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon is ordered to link-up with another friendly force in enemy controlled territory. The HQ directing the link-up establishes the boundaries, restricted fire lines (RFL) axis of advance, general linkup point, chain of command, and other control / coordinating measures. Platoon size enemy elements are operating in the area.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon links up at the time and place specified, and receives no casualties from friendly fire.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. Based on an estimate of the situation, the platoon commander develops a link-up plan: a. develops a scheme of manoeuvre and control measures (coordination points, phase lines, routes, etc) b. reviews the fire plan c. develops actions at the link-up point and tasks for subordinate section commanders d. constructs contingency plans in the event of enemy contact before, during and after link-up e. identifies tentative primary and alternate link-up sites by map reconnaissance if the link-up sites have not been designated by the higher HQ. Sites are easy to recognize, have cover and concealment, and are			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>defendable / securable</p> <p>f. provides multiple access and escape routes.</p> <p>2. The platoon commander coordinates and obtains pertinent information from the link-up force:</p> <p>a. verifies frequencies, call signs, codes, visual signals and alternate recognition signals</p> <p>b. obtains fire coordination measures</p> <p>c. determines the command relationship with the link-up force (who is in charge if the enemy attacks during/after link-up)</p> <p>d. coordinates actions following link-up</p> <p>e. establishes control measures and a RFL as required</p> <p>f. establishes how long the link-up site will be occupied (either in terms of time or percentage of unit that has arrived).</p> <p>3. The link-up point is established:</p> <p>a. the force establishing the linkup sends a security element to locate and secure the link-up point</p> <p>b. the security element occupies the link-up point by the time stated in the order.</p> <p>4. The security element secures the link-up point:</p> <p>a. establishes security for the link-up point</p> <p>b. takes up covered and concealed positions to observe the link-up point and await the</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>moving force</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. marks the link-up point with prearranged recognition signals. <p>5. The moving force takes action to link-up:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the moving force establishes communications with the stationary force, if not under radio silence b. the moving force commander issues final instructions and contingency plans to the reconnaissance element. <p>6. The moving force reconnaissance element performs the initial link-up:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the reconnaissance element commander verifies the link-up point and positions the security element in covered and concealed positions that dominate the link-up point b. the reconnaissance element commander signals the stationary force c. the reconnaissance element commander conducts final coordination with the stationary force. <p>7. The moving force links up:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the moving force reconnaissance element commander guides the stationary force guides to the moving force b. the stationary force guides alert the main body before guiding the moving force to the stationary force 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>c. the stationary force guides direct the moving force into its assigned sector of the defensive perimeter</p> <p>d. the moving force commander coordinates with the stationary force commander and assigns tasks and sectors to his sections based on the coordination.</p> <p>8. The linked up forces continue the mission under command of the commander designated by the higher HQ:</p> <p>a. the designated commander for the entire force establishes and clarifies the chain of command</p> <p>b. the higher HQ is sent a report of link-up completion.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

4308 B/C/D - MOVE TACTICALLY

ELEMENT: SECT / PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The element is operating as part of a larger force and has been ordered to move cross-country, by road or a combination of both. The element is not in contact, but contact is possible. The route along which the element is to move has not been secured by any other force.

TASK STANDARD:

The element moves on the specified route IAW orders, and enemy contact does not disrupt the move, or detract from the element's effectiveness. All relevant information (terrain, obstacles, priority intelligence requirements, etc) is reported. The element minimizes exposure to the enemy, maintains all-round security, and meets prescribed timings.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The element commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 , 'Battle Procedure,' with emphasis on: a. identifies possible enemy locations or avenues of approach b. identifies restrictive terrain, obstacles or areas of NBC contamination c. selects route that provides adequate cover and concealment (unless the route is designated in orders) and that permits the element to meet prescribed timings d. specifies use of waypoints and / or GPS to assist in navigation, if applicable			

Sub-Tasks and Standards		Eff	NPrac	Ineff
e.	coordinates movement across boundaries if crossing into another unit's area			
f.	coordinates air defence coverage for the move			
g.	identifies if a change of NBC posture will be required			
h.	determines order of march, movement type and formation that will provide the best combination of all round security and speed			
i.	assumes a position from which the combat team can be most effectively commanded.			
2.	The element:			
a.	makes best use of the terrain to minimize exposure to the enemy			
b.	uses most effective movement type, formations and positioning of key weapon systems to maintain all round security and speed			
c.	maintains correct interval and lateral dispersion			
d.	employs planned control measures and visual signals			
e.	employs air sentries			
f.	monitors status and location of friendly forces and disseminates information as necessary			
g.	IAW orders, establishes and maintains			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>contact with friendly units.</p> <p>3. The element takes appropriate action at halts:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. assumes dispersed positions under cover b. establishes security c. checks weapons, equipment and performs maintenance d. conducts resupply when appropriate. <p>4. The element takes appropriate action at unscheduled halts during tactical movement on roads and trails:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. clears route b. establishes local security c. determines the cause of the halt d. reports unscheduled halt to the commander with as much information as possible about the reason for the halt e. eliminates the cause of the halt, if possible f. continues the move when directed by the commander or as soon as possible g. if applicable, appropriate actions are taken when vehicles become disabled: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) disabled vehicles are moved off the road, if possible, so that they do not block traffic (2) guides are posted to direct traffic 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p style="text-align: center;">around the vehicle(s), if necessary</p> <p>(3) ensures local security and radio watch are established</p> <p>(4) IAW unit SOPs, reports status of the disabled vehicle(s) to the commander</p> <p>(5) repairs are conducted within capability and the vehicle(s) rejoin the rear of the column.</p> <p>5. Upon encountering natural and artificial obstacles, the element adopts the following procedure:</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Warning – the element commander attempts to gain as much information about the obstacle as early as possible through higher reconnaissance. If this is not available, lead elements report the obstacle</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Security – under cover, the element moves into positions of fire and observation. Maximum use is made of available sensors to observe the obstacle and surrounding terrain</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">c. Reconnaissance – the element commander moves into position to observe the obstacle and surrounding area. Speculative fire, if authorized and appropriate, is employed on suspected enemy positions</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">d. Plan – the element commander performs a combat estimate and makes a plan.</p> <p>6. The element bypasses or breaches the obstacle IAW held-up / contact drills on encountering a natural or</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>artificial obstacle:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the element searches for existing bypass locations b. if the enemy is detected, it is engaged with anti-armour and indirect fire in an attempt to destroy it or force it to withdraw c. if the enemy cannot be destroyed or forced to withdraw, it is picketed d. if a bypass location is found, those portions of the element not in supporting positions move to and secure the bypass. Once the bypass is secure, the element passes through as quickly as possible, and continues its move e. if a bypass location cannot be found, the element takes the following course of action: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) if no enemy force has been detected, or has withdrawn, the element takes necessary action to secure the obstacle and moves through it in a manner which minimizes the risk to indirect fire or, if necessary, breaches the obstacle IAW Cbt Tm BTS 4303, 'Breach Obstacles,' or (2) if enemy forces have been detected, and cannot be destroyed or forced to withdraw, the element, unless otherwise ordered, breaches (if necessary) and attacks IAW BTS 4001, 'Attack' (Sect/Pl or Coy). 			
7. The element passes the following information to			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>higher HQ:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. location of the obstacle(s) b. type(s) of obstacle(s). c. length / width of obstacle area d. enemy coverage of the obstacle, including enemy strength e. breaching requirements f. bypass route(s). <p>8. The element reacts to a suspected enemy position:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. carries out Warning, Security, Reconnaissance, and Plan procedures b. if the risk is unacceptable and time permits, the element secures the position c. if the risk is acceptable or the requirement for speed does not permit the element to secure the position: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) elements are designated to provide fire on the position if enemy forces are identified, or smoke is used to mask the position (2) the element bypasses the position as quickly as possible and carries on with the mission. <p>9. The element moves through a built-up area:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. upon reaching a built-up area, the element moves into a column or staggered column 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>formation</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. if applicable, infantry may dismount and provides close-in security for the front, flanks and rear of the column c. infantry reconnoitres and clears rooftops, buildings and obstacles along the route IAW the orders d. alert friendly elements of any enemy armour or anti-tank weapons e. if applicable, APCs provide fire support for dismounted infantry f. trailing personnel maintain visual contact with the lead of the element and dismounted infantry g. the element commander reports clearing of built-up area routes to higher HQ. <p>10. The element commander reports route progress and all relevant information (terrain, obstacles, PIR, etc) to higher HQ IAW the orders.</p> <p>11. The element meets all prescribed timings.</p>			

4309 C/D - OCCUPY ASSEMBLY AREA / HARBOUR / HIDE**ELEMENT: PL / COY****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The platoon / company has been given the order to move and occupy an assembly area, harbour, or hide. The platoon / company is given a general area and allowed to select the exact location of the assembly area, harbour, or hide. Resupply and maintenance support are available. The enemy has the capability to perform section and platoon level probes supported by indirect fire and close air support (CAS). This platoon / company can be mounted or dismounted.

TASK STANDARD:

The reconnaissance party completes preparations and guides the platoon / company main body into their respective positions no later than the time specified in orders. OPSEC is maintained. The platoon / company completes preparation as detailed by the commander no later than the time specified.

Note: The following sub-tasks and standards do not necessarily apply to the same degree for assembly areas / harbours / hides. The degree of emphasis on security and concealment vice routine administration varies with the drill being executed (eg. hides require a higher degree of security and concealment than harbours, which are designed to allow routine maintenance and resupply).

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The commander tentatively selects an assembly area / harbour / hide that provides: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. concealment and space for dispersal b. entry and exit routes c. drainage and level areas d. defence and security. Open areas around the 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>assembly area allow security with minimum allocation of manpower.</p> <p>2. The commander issues orders that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. designate tentative areas for each subordinate element b. designate a reconnaissance party, reconnaissance party instructions and reconnaissance party leader. The reconnaissance party includes personnel to select and mark routes, to guide the main body into positions and to secure the area c. specify an order of march d. provide for all-round defence e. designate priority of work and provides for maintenance and resupply f. has the occupation accomplished under conditions of limited visibility if possible. <p>3. The platoon / company constitutes a reconnaissance party:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. guides from each section / platoon link-up with the reconnaissance party commander b. the reconnaissance party may include vehicles and personnel from each section / platoon as the tactical situation permits. <p>4. Reconnaissance party prepares to move:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the reconnaissance party commander issues a warning order b. all personnel are briefed on the plan and 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>their duties, including:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) the proposed location of the platoon / company assembly area, harbour, or hide (2) the location of the contact point (3) the time of the main body's arrival at the start point (SP) and release point (rel P) (4) routes to the assembly area, harbour, or hide for both the reconnaissance party and main body (5) the order of march for the platoon / company (6) the proposed location of platoon / company HQ (7) NBC conditions and MOPP level (8) whether radio silence is or will be in effect (9) representatives and composition of reconnaissance party (10) any special instructions. <p>5. The reconnaissance party moves to the new area:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. maintains security b. reconnoitres the route from SP to RP c. monitors for NBC contamination, if required 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>d. marks obstacles and bypass routes.</p> <p>6. The reconnaissance party moves into the new area and prepares it for the platoon / company's arrival:</p> <p>a. halts at the entrance and personnel dismount and do a sweep of the immediate area</p> <p>b. vehicles enter assembly area, harbour, or hide and establish a firm base, with drivers remaining to man radios and weapons</p> <p>c. for a dismounted platoon / company, the entry point is selected at the 6 o'clock position, the perimeter is marked, and track plan established</p> <p>d. party completes sweep of area while reconnaissance party commander conducts reconnaissance</p> <p>e. party RVs at firm base where reconnaissance party commander allocates section / platoon areas, taking into account type of assembly area, harbour, or hide defence (linear, internal or perimeter) and location of support arms, for example:</p> <p>(1) anti-armour weapons cover main approaches</p> <p>(2) air defence sentries cover air approaches with good fields of observation and fire</p> <p>(3) FC / FOO are positioned to cover main approaches</p> <p>f. if radio silence is not in effect, the</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>reconnaissance party commander moves to the area selected for the platoon / company HQ and establishes communication with higher HQ</p> <p>g. if time and radio silence situation permit, the reconnaissance party commander establishes communication with the platoon / company commander and confirms the suitability of the area and the order of march</p> <p>h. the reconnaissance party commander coordinates the local defence while section / platoon representatives draw sketches for their commanders and mark vehicle positions</p> <p>i. OPs and NBC sentries are established to maintain security</p> <p>j. for hides, rolling replenishment is conducted prior to occupation</p> <p>k. guides move to designated RVs to meet the platoon / company.</p> <p>7. The platoon / company occupies the assembly area, harbour, or hide:</p> <p>a. sections / platoons are guided to their new locations</p> <p>b. individual vehicles are placed in locations designated by section / platoon guides, and switch off independently</p> <p>c. if dismounted, the platoon / company enters at the 6 o'clock position, with the HQ element moving through to occupy the</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>centre of the designated shape of the assembly area, harbour, or hide shape (circle, triangle, 'Y')</p> <p>d. commanders at all levels are briefed by their reconnaissance party representatives with the sketch of the area</p> <p>e. the element designated to man the contact points does so immediately</p> <p>f. areas are secured</p> <p>g. the commander issues orders, which include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) priority of work (2) state of readiness (3) crash harbour RVs (4) routine (5) whether line will be laid (6) camouflage (7) stand to (8) radio silence (9) arcs of responsibility (10) track plan (11) resupply procedures (12) NBC state <p>h. section / platoon 2ICs brief commanders on</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>assembly area / harbour / hide layout</p> <p>i. platoon / company HQ sends a LOCSTATE to higher HQ</p> <p>j. section / platoon commanders reconnoitre the location of crash harbour RVs with subordinates if possible / permitted.</p> <p>8. The platoon / company carries out assembly area, harbour, hide drills:</p> <p>a. makes maximum use of available time to prepare for upcoming operations:</p> <p>(1) supplies and ammunition are replenished</p> <p>(2) vehicles and equipment are repaired / recovered</p> <p>(3) training is conducted</p> <p>(4) plans are prepared</p> <p>(5) troops are rested</p> <p>b. maintains security and concealment.</p> <p>9. The commander coordinates with adjacent units:</p> <p>a. establishes responsibility for overlapping fields of fire on enemy approaches</p> <p>b. verifies information on OP locations and unit signals</p> <p>c. security and defence.</p> <p>10. The plan for defending the assembly area, harbour, or hide is further developed, depending on the</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>anticipated length of the occupation:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. enemy approaches are identified b. vehicles prepare primary, and alternate fighting positions as required c. protective obstacles are placed on likely enemy approaches d. local defence, NBC and air sentries are constantly maintained e. the use of indirect fire is planned f. enemy elements can not move to within visual range of any position without being detected. <p>11. On leaving the area, the platoon / company:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. recovers all mines and obstacles b. leaves nothing of intelligence or material value c. eliminates signs of the its presence in the area (trash, aiming posts, telephone wire) d. ensures vehicles do not line up on roads, but move directly from their positions at the designated timing. 			

4310 C/D - CONDUCT A CONVOY ESCORT**ELEMENT: PL / COY****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The platoon / company is tasked to conduct a convoy escort to accompany and protect a vehicle column. Civilian or military organizations may be involved. The route is provided. The escort commander is normally the convoy commander.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon / company escorts the convoy to its new location by the time specified in the orders, without losing any vehicles due to inadequate control or immediate reaction measures / drills.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The escort commander completes battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 , 'Battle Procedure,' with special emphasis on the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. specific mission b. detailed map reconnaissance and reconnaissance plan c. provision of liaison officer (LO) with civilian authorities d. enemy / belligerent threat e. RV and schedule f. hides, rest halts g. primary and alternate routes h. small or large convoy 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> i. confrontation lines along route j. inspection of the cargo k. national origin of the column l. column commander m. packet commanders' responsibilities n. action at halts, checkpoints, and drop off point o. counter-ambush / mine plan p. communications plan q. provision of first aid r. identification of the higher rapid reaction force. 			
<p>2. The escort commander organizes the convoy into three groupings:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. advance group - lead element provides security of the route to provide early warning where possible, and reconnoitres detours and establish pickets b. close protection group - provides immediate well-defended convoy protection. The escort commander is located within this group c. reserve group - provides a rearguard / reserve, medical and recovery resources. 			
<p>3. The escort commander determines the method of escort required:</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>a. column grouping</p> <p>b. tunnel concept</p> <p>4. The escort commander briefs subordinate commander / personnel on convoy procedures:</p> <p>a. the route to include medical and maintenance support locations and the destination</p> <p>b. the prescribed average speed, maximum speed and distance between vehicles, packets</p> <p>c. accident and breakdown procedures</p> <p>d. blackout policy</p> <p>e. communications procedures</p> <p>f. air sentry requirements</p> <p>g. negotiation procedure</p> <p>h. immediate action drills IAW BTS 4308, 5004, and 5005, ‘Move Tactically,’ ‘Defend Against Air Attack,’ and ‘React to Contact / Direct Fire / Indirect Fire’</p> <p>i. conducts rehearsals.</p> <p>5. The lead vehicle crosses the start point at the specified time. The escort commander verifies that all vehicles have crossed the start point and reports to higher HQ.</p> <p>6. The escort commander determines and reports the location of all halts.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>7. The escort conducts scheduled halts:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. halts at prescribed times to avoid possible conflict with other convoy schedules b. when possible, halts where visibility is at least 200 m to the front and rear of the column c. establishes a perimeter defence d. departs on schedule. <p>8. The convoy makes an unscheduled halt due to a vehicle accident, road block or some other unplanned event:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. all halts are reported to the escort commander, and reports the halt to higher HQ b. the escort takes immediate action IAW the threat c. the advance guard commander or LO negotiates confrontations d. during halts, the escort establishes a perimeter defence e. the escort resumes movement on the escort commander's order. <p>9. The convoy reacts to an ambush:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. ambushed elements immediately proceed through the ambush if at all possible b. the escort commander immediately decides to proceed through the ambush if at all 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>possible</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. if proceeding through the ambush is not possible, the escort commander decides to halt and attempt to eliminate the enemy threat and extricate the ambushed elements d. the escort force immediately reacts e. suppressive fire is used to cover immediate deployment f. that part of the convoy not caught in the ambush is halted and protected g. that part of the convoy caught in the ambush is extricated h. if applicable, all vehicles being escorted clear the road to permit the escort force to manoeuvre i. once all vehicles are clear of the ambush, the commander issues orders for some or all vehicles to continue on the primary route, use an alternate route, return to the start point or proceed to another location, as applicable j. no vehicles are lost due to inappropriate or improperly carried out ambush drills. 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

4311 C/D - RELIEF IN PLACE

ELEMENT: PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon / company is ordered to relieve another unit in place, or is relieved by another unit. Enemy action is possible.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon / company performs a relief in place with minimal reduction in the ability to defend the position and without being detected. The platoon / company performs the relief no later than the time specified in the order.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The commanders plan a relief in place: a. issues a warning order b. if the platoon / company is incoming, designates an advance party. 2. The platoon / company prepares for the relief: a. if the platoon / company is incoming, reconnaissance is conducted b. if the platoon / company is outgoing, nonessential equipment is thinned-out c. routes and positions are marked d. guides are positioned. 3. The incoming and outgoing commanders meet and exchange essential information: a. arrange a specific time and place for			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>coordination</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. include participation by section and weapons detachment commanders, and attachment commanders c. exchange enemy information d. reconnaissance the area of the unit being relieved e. exchange CEOI information f. discuss the use of guides and liaison personnel g. check security and control measures h. review fire support plans i. review the barrier plan j. establish the sequence and method of relief k. establish a specific time for the transfer of responsibility l. exchange information on OPs and patrols m. coordinates the exchange of weapons and equipment, as ordered. <p>4. The incoming commander finalizes the plan:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. develops a plan based on planning and coordinate with the unit to be relieved b. develops and issues an Op O. <p>5. The units execute the relief sequentially or</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>simultaneously:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. both outgoing and incoming units operate on the outgoing unit’s command net b. unit guides control movement c. handle emergencies on the incoming unit’s net d. when the relief is complete, the incoming unit operates on its own net. <p>6. The units conduct a sequential relief:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the incoming unit moves to an assembly area to the rear of the outgoing unit b. CPs and echelons of the two units co-locate to facilitate the relief and transfer of equipment, ammunition, supplies, and obstacles c. the first incoming section / platoon moves to the position of the first outgoing section / platoon to be relieved d. each vehicle and dismounted position is relieved one at a time e. the outgoing vehicles and personnel move to an assembly area behind the position f. relief of subsequent sections / platoons begins once the first outgoing section / platoon reaches and clears its release point g. command passes after two or more sections / platoons of the incoming combat unit has completed relief - for a company relief in place, this includes the forward platoons - 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>or as ordered</p> <p>h. transfer of supplies and obstacles is completed (including the handover of CF 947 Protective Minefield(s) Record(s)).</p> <p>7. The units conduct simultaneous relief:</p> <p>a. all incoming sections / platoons move along designated routes to the outgoing section / platoon positions</p> <p>b. all vehicles and dismounted personnel are relieved simultaneously and immediately move to an assembly area</p> <p>c. the transfer of supplies and obstacles, including the handover of Protective Minefield Record(s), is completed.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

4312 C/D - WITHDRAWAL

ELEMENT: PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The enemy may or may not be engaging the platoon with direct fire. The platoon / company is operating as part of a larger force and is given an order to conduct a withdrawal, or the enemy situation forces the unit from its position. Another element may be covering the withdrawal. The enemy is company(-) in size, and has close air support (CAS) and indirect fire support available.

TASK STANDARD:

Key timings are met (eg. rearward movement, position denial, thinning out and all troops clear of a line to the rear of the position). The platoon / company is not cut off from the larger force. The withdrawal is conducted so that detection is avoided, or occurs too late for the enemy to affect the withdrawal. All supplies and equipment that cannot be evacuated are destroyed. All PWs and casualties are evacuated.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon / company commander completes battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 , 'Battle Procedure.' 2. The platoon / company commander plans / prepares for withdrawal: a. develops the size, composition, tasks and commander of the reconnaissance party b. distributes specific tasks to sections c. 2ICs conduct reconnaissance d. coordinate direct / indirect fire to cover			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>disengagement</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. plans and prepares routes to reduce congestion f. organizes security forces to cover movement g. plans / coordinates with supporting elements h. develops deception activities i. develops contingency plans in case the enemy attacks during the withdrawal. <p>3. The platoon / company commander receives the order, or makes the decision to withdraw (if IAW the higher commander's orders or intent) and issues orders:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the platoon / company commander makes a rapid estimate of the situation b. determines and promulgates key timings: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) the time to start thinning out (2) the time before which there will be no rearward movement except for normal traffic and reconnaissance parties (3) the time up to which the position must be denied to the enemy (4) the time by which the position is abandoned (5) the time by which all troops will be 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p style="text-align: center;">clear of a line behind the position</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. establishes a sequence of withdrawal d. coordinates with higher HQ e. coordinates for a rearward passage of lines when necessary f. plans occupation of the new position g. designates a rear guard force to be used when under extreme enemy pressure. <p>4. The platoon / company executes the withdrawal:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. indirect fire and obstacles are employed to slow the enemy and mask the movement of the elements b. if out of contact, the enemy does not detect the withdrawal, or detects it too late to affect the withdrawal c. if in contact, the least heavily engaged element withdraws first. Casualties and nonessential elements and equipment are evacuated with this element, if not already evacuated with the reconnaissance parties d. use fire and movement to establish clean break e. RVs and checkpoints are established f. all materials and equipment that must be left behind are destroyed or rendered inoperable. <p>5. When necessary, the platoon / company conducts</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>a rearward passage of lines IAW BTS 4302, ‘Passage of Lines.’</p> <p>6. The platoon / company reports throughout the withdrawal, and when it is ready to continue the defence or execute the next task.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

4313 B/C - BREAK CONTACT

ELEMENT: SECT / PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section / platoon is moving or stationary and the enemy engages. The commander orders the section / platoon to break contact. Note that this BTS could be read in combination with BTS [5005](#), 'React to Contact / Direct Fire / Indirect Fire.' Moreover, this BTS could be imbedded into BTS [4312](#), 'Withdrawal,' as the method used to conduct effective fire and movement to gain a clean break from the enemy.

TASK STANDARD:

The section / platoon moves to where the enemy cannot observe, or place direct fire on it. The section / platoon continues follow-on operations.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>1. The section / platoon commander gives the order to break contact:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. directs one element / section in contact to establish a fire base and support the disengagement of the remainder of the section / platoonb. orders the movement of elements / sections to a recognizable terrain feature, or to the last RV to establish a subsequent fire base <p>2. The fire base element / section continues to suppress the enemy:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. maintains effective direct fire against specified targets			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>b. uses indirect fire (if available) to suppress the enemy and mask movement</p> <p>c. obscures the enemy with smoke.</p> <p>3. The moving elements / sections begin their disengagement:</p> <p>a. use fragmentation and smoke grenades to mask movement</p> <p>b. take up designated positions and engage the enemy.</p> <p>4. The section / platoon commander directs the firebase to move to its next location.</p> <p>a. uses the appropriate movement technique based on the volume and accuracy of the enemy fire</p> <p>b. takes up a designated position and engages the enemy.</p> <p>5. The section / platoon continues to bound away from the enemy:</p> <p>a. continues to suppress the enemy</p> <p>b. continues to bound until it breaks contact, passes through a higher level, or reaches the assigned position for its next mission</p> <p>c. changes the direction of movement once contact is broken to reduce the ability of the enemy to place effective indirect fire on the unit</p> <p>d. moves to the last RV in the absence of a</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>commander's instructions.</p> <p>6. The section / platoon commander moves the section / platoon to the final RV:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. accounts for personnel and equipment b. reorganizes as required IAW BTS 4305, 'Consolidate.' c. reports to the higher commander. 			

4315 B - ESTABLISH A TRAFFIC CONTROL POST**ELEMENT: RECCE DET / SECT****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITION**

The reconnaissance det / section has been tasked to establish a traffic control post (TCP) as part of a movement control organization. In addition, the det / section may be responsible to reconnoitre the route and proposed Waiting / Halt areas. Enemy contact is possible or expected. Radio silence is in effect.

TASK STANDARD:

The reconnaissance det / section establishes the TCP within the timings directed in orders. The det / section operates the TCP effectively in all weather and visibility conditions, and helps to maintain a regular flow of traffic and prevent congestion on the route. The det / section assists the move of the passing units with no compromise of security, and maintains a log of the packets/serials/columns which have proceeded through the TCP. The det / section commander informs higher HQ of the progress of the move.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The det / section commander carries out battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 , 'Battle Procedure.' 2. The det / section commander conducts a reconnaissance of the TCP location, with emphasis on the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. routes in/out b. identify critical areas along route (bridges, chokepoints, etc) c. waiting areas d. concealed positions for det / section 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>vehicles</p> <p>e. alternate routes around the TCP</p> <p>f. suitable LZ.</p> <p>3. The det / section:</p> <p>a. conducts a reconnaissance of the route within sector to identify and mark, as ordered, alternate routes, detours, waiting and halt areas</p> <p>b. establishes and maintains communications with the higher HQ</p> <p>c. sites pointmen at all directions from which traffic may be expected. They must be properly equipped to include personal weapon, complete fighting order, NBC IPE, flashlight, traffic baton and movement schedule</p> <p>d. ensures columns / serials / packets follow the prescribed route and block timings</p> <p>e. identifies and logs each column / serial / packet as they pass the TCP</p> <p>f. prevents unauthorized military and civilian traffic from interfering with scheduled movement</p> <p>g. reports any refugees activity which may effect the move</p> <p>h. ensures that local security of the TCP and det / section vehicles is maintained at all times</p> <p>i. conducts a reconnaissance of detours and</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>directs traffic along detours if traffic on the main route becomes blocked</p> <p>j. maintains close watch on the progress of the move and reports, as ordered, to the Sector HQ</p> <p>k. helps to transmit and effect any changes in orders to the passing units</p> <p>l. reports on the condition of the route.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

4316 D/F - CONDUCT ROAD MOVEMENT

ELEMENT: ADMIN COY / BN HQ

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The unit must move to a new location by road. It has received a move warning order and subsequent order. In the case where the unit will be participating in a brigade move, the unit will be responsible to plan and conduct its move to the brigade Start Point (SP) and from the brigade Release Point (rel P) to the new location. Movement control along the brigade route will be provided by the brigade. In the case of a unit move, the unit will be responsible to provide movement control along its route using integral and attached assets.

TASK STANDARD:

The movement plan is prepared IAW CFP 303(9) and unit SOPs, and is distributed in time to permit integral, attached and supporting units to adequately prepare for the move. Vehicles and personnel are prepared to conduct the move safely and within prescribed timings. The unit moves to the new location with minimal casualties from enemy action or accidents, meets all prescribed timings, does not disrupt the move of other units and, upon arrival in the new location, is ready to conduct subsequent tasks with minimal reorganization.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. Battle Procedure is carried out IAW BTS 1001 , 'Battle Procedure,' with emphasis on the following points: a. ground and / or air reconnaissance of the primary and alternate routes is conducted, if possible b. defiles, possible ambush sites, and bridge classifications are identified c. enemy activity			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>d. support requirements for traffic control, communications, escort, indirect fire, air defence, supply and decontamination are identified</p> <p>e. packet / column composition and order of march are designed to permit the unit to meet timings, provide security in case of enemy contact and, upon arrival at the new location, to carry on with subsequent tasks with minimum reorganization.</p> <p>2. A move order, movement table(s), graphs, and overlays, as required, are prepared IAW CFP 303(9) and distributed to integral, attached and supporting units in time to allow adequate preparation for the move.</p> <p>3. A route card is prepared IAW CFP 303(9) and contains sufficient detail to permit personnel to complete the move without maps and to assist packet / column commanders to meet prescribed timings.</p> <p>4. The unit completes preliminary preparations to move by road:</p> <p>a. personnel are briefed on the move</p> <p>b. route cards are prepared and distributed</p> <p>c. vehicle and equipment maintenance checks are conducted</p> <p>d. vehicles are loaded, loads are configured to meet height restrictions, and antennas are tied down</p> <p>e. critical supplies and equipment are dispersed throughout the packets / columns in order to minimize critical losses</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards		Eff	NPrac	Ineff
f.	Trail Party vehicles and personnel are designated			
g.	Rear Party vehicles and equipment, if applicable, are positioned in areas that provide cover and concealment, and do not impede departure of main body vehicles			
h.	personnel receive the maximum amount of rest possible. Rest is enforced if necessary			
i.	Advance or Staging Party vehicles and personnel are dispatched by times indicated in orders			
j.	the route to the brigade / unit SP is signed IAW unit SOPs.			
5.	The unit completes final preparations for the move:			
a.	the unit conforms to the degree of notice and related activities. Camouflage and security are maintained as late as possible			
b.	packet / column commanders inspect vehicles, trailers and personnel			
c.	vehicles are marshalled under cover, if possible			
d.	available LMGs, HMGs and hand held AT weapons are distributed within packets / columns to enhance security			
e.	arcs are assigned			
f.	air sentries are posted			
g.	IAW orders, radio nets are opened			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> h. the area is swept to maintain OPSEC i. Trail Party moves to and mans the unit SP <p>6. The unit moves to the new location:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. lead vehicle crosses SP at specified time b. packets / columns do not bunch up or block SP c. the unit maintains march discipline: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) packets / columns and vehicles maintain the correct speeds, distances and proper positions (2) vehicles are operated effectively (3) personnel react quickly and appropriately to all signals and orders (4) traffic regulations, traffic control orders and rules of the road are observed (5) passive air and ground defence measures such as cover, concealment, camouflage, dispersion and use of blackout driving equipment and night vision equipment are employed (6) vehicles and equipment are serviced whenever necessary and possible (7) traffic control personnel are kept informed of the current situation regarding the move 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>d. signs from the former unit location to the brigade / unit SP are removed</p> <p>e. accurate and timely SITREPs, NBC reports, information on passage of critical points, phase lines and other control measures are transmitted IAW orders and OPSEC measures</p> <p>f. packets / columns take appropriate action at scheduled halts:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) reach the halt area on time (2) all vehicles clear the route (3) vehicles are dispersed under cover, and camouflaged IAW unit SOPs (4) local security is established (5) halt parades and necessary maintenance are conducted (6) resupply and feeding are conducted with a sense of urgency (7) the packet departs the halt area on time <p>g. packets / columns take appropriate action at unscheduled halts:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) all vehicles clear the route, if possible (2) local security is established (3) the cause of the halt is determined (4) the unscheduled halt is reported to 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>the move control organization and the following packets / columns</p> <p>(5) the cause of the halt is eliminated, if possible</p> <p>(6) the packets / columns continue the move when directed by the move control organization or as soon as possible</p> <p>h. packets / columns take appropriate action when vehicles become disabled:</p> <p>(1) if possible, disabled vehicles are moved off the road so that they do not block traffic</p> <p>(2) the disabled vehicle(s) displays the appropriate visual indicator and deploys safety equipment (eg. triangles, flares) as required</p> <p>(3) IAW orders or unit SOPs, the remainder of the packet / column continues with the road move</p> <p>(4) the vehicle crew directs traffic around the disabled vehicle(s)</p> <p>(5) local security and radio watch are established</p> <p>(6) the status of the disabled vehicle(s) is reported</p> <p>(7) repairs are conducted by the crew or Trail Party and the vehicle(s) joins the Trail Party</p> <p>i. the packet / column reacts to air attack or</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>ambush IAW BTS 5004, ‘Defend Against Air Attack,’ or BTS 5006, ‘React to Ambush’</p> <p>j. packets / columns cross the rel P on time and proceed to the new location without halting or blocking the rel P</p> <p>7. Report status in new location.</p>			

4321 C - SUPPORT AN ASSAULT BOAT CROSSING**ELEMENT: PNR PL****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The platoon receives orders to support a company size manoeuvre element during the assault stage of a hasty or deliberate river crossing operation. Orders include the crossing site location, manoeuvre element to be crossed, H-hour, whether the crossing is to be silent or noisy, number of boats/motors assigned, and the location from which boats/motors can be drawn. A gap crossing site reconnaissance has been completed and the reconnaissance report (eg. DND 2106 or E122B GAPRECCEREP) is available. Elements of the force-in-place provide local security. No iterations of training on this task are required under NBC conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The crossing subunit is briefed and safely transported across the water obstacle at the designated site. The crossing commences (eg. crosses line of departure (LD) along near shoreline) at H-hour. Strict noise and light discipline is observed at all times.

Note: Peacetime training safety measures are observed IAW B-GL-304-003/TS-0A1, Training Safety while training near, on or in water.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 , 'Battle Procedure.' 2. If time permits and the platoon did not conduct the original gap crossing reconnaissance, a platoon reconnaissance party conducts a confirmatory reconnaissance to confirm the crossing site location and key locations at the site (eg. debussing point, boat off loading point (BOLP), boat inflation point (BIP), check point, attack position, LD).			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>3. The platoon commander's orders include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. assignment of key personnel / sections to activities at the debussing point, BOLP, BIP, check point and attack position b. assignment of crews to boats, as appropriate for a silent or noisy crossing c. crossing subunit's strength, identification, and arrival time d. H-hour e. 'action on' procedures, including what action is to be taken following off loading of the crossing subunit on the far shore. <p>4. Platoon representatives draw the required number of boats / motors and quantity of fuel at the location designated in orders, inspect / test the equipment, and address any deficiencies.</p> <p>5. For a deliberate crossing when time permits, the platoon conducts rehearsals with the crossing subunit at a secure location in the rear.</p> <p>6. On arrival at the site, the platoon establishes a zulu harbour.</p> <p>7. The platoon lays out the site IAW the reconnaissance report or confirmatory reconnaissance.</p> <p>8. Platoon personnel are briefed on site layout, boat entry and exit locations and markings, etc.</p> <p>9. Platoon RV's with the crossing subunit at the debussing point. Commanders coordinate assignment of loads to boats, boat entry and exit locations and markings, etc. Crossing subunit personnel are briefed on</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>water safety measures, embarkation and debarkation drills, paddling, etc.</p> <p>10. Boats, motors, etc are received and unloaded at the BOLP.</p> <p>11. If not already inflated prior to arrival at the site, boats are moved to the BIP and inflated. The risk of giving away the crossing site location is weighed against speed when deciding to use manual inflation means versus compressors.</p> <p>12. Boats, with assigned crews and crossing subunit personnel, are moved from the BIP, through the checkpoint, to the attack position and cross the LD at H-hour.</p> <p>13. Pioneers return boats to the near shoreline to pick up additional waves of crossing subunit personnel, as required.</p> <p>14. Ensure strict noise and light discipline is adhered to at all times.</p> <p>15. The platoon submits periodic task status reports IAW unit SOPs.</p> <p>16. Upon completion of the assault boat crossing, the platoon collapses, repairs (eg. patches boats), repack and returns the boats / motors.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

4322 C - BREACH MINEFIELD MANUALLY

ELEMENT: PNR PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

A platoon receives orders to execute a manual breach of a minefield as part of a deliberate breaching operation. Orders include information acquired during the reconnaissance, the start and end points of the breach lane, the width of lane to be achieved (1 metre if dismounted; minimum of 5 metres if mounted) and the time by which the breach is to be achieved. The breach is executed under conditions of low visibility and the minefield is no more than 350 metres in depth (eg. 8 hours of manual breaching). No iterations of training on this task are performed under NBC conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The breach is completed and ready for firing by the time stated in orders. The platoon takes all reasonable precautions to prevent detection by the enemy.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 , 'Battle Procedure.' 2. Orders include the assignment of personnel to the Setting Out, Breaching, Explosive Charge and Lane Marking Parties. 3. The IC Breaching Team controls the breaching operation: a. coordinates and controls all parties working in and moving to / from the lane breach b. ensures that work parties move only in cleared areas, work in echelon and maintain			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>the minimum safety distance of 20m</p> <p>c. coordinates the activities of any working parties detailed for work other than breaching in the lane</p> <p>d. allots personnel to duties in later phases when they have finished their initial tasks</p> <p>e. submits task status reports to higher headquarters IAW unit SOPs.</p> <p>4. The Setting Out Party breaches the setting out lane:</p> <p>a. No 1 searches a 5m long and 1m wide base line perpendicular to the safe lane:</p> <p>(1) marks both sides of the base line with mine tape</p> <p>(2) checks for trip wires using the trip wire feeler drill, looks / feels for mines and prods for buried mines along the baseline using the prodder drill</p> <p>(3) marks and bypasses all anti-tank (AT) mines and neutralizes and marks all anti-personnel (APers) mines. Personnel not involved in neutralizing an APers mine cease work and adopt a prone position when an APers mine is being neutralized</p> <p>(4) upon finding a trip wire, the No 1 searches to both ends of the wire, neutralizes / marks any mechanisms, cuts the wire and ensures the ends of</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p style="text-align: center;">the wire are clear of the lane before continuing the search of the path</p> <p>Note: If speed is essential and the enemy is either known not to be employing APers mines, or mines have sufficient metallic content to ensure detection, the option exists for the No 1 to search for buried mines using the mine detector drill instead of the prodder drill.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. starting on the right hand side of the baseline, the No 1 searches a 1m metre wide path through the minefield in the same manner that the base line was searched. No 1 lays out tapes on both the right and left side of the path c. IC maintains 1m spacing from No 1, pins down tapes laid by No 1, and ensures that No 1 maintains the correct bearing d. No 2 maintains 5m spacing from IC and locates any deep buried mines. When found, No 2 withdraws to allow IC to uncover, neutralize (if an APers mine) and marks the mine e. Setting Out Party lays out cross tapes across the 1 m path at 50m intervals to facilitate IC Breaching Team's control of the operation f. after fixing the finishing tape, the IC Setting Out Party reports to the IC Breaching Team and moves his party a minimum of 20m to the left / right of the lane to a pre-identified RV. <p>5. Breaching Parties work in echelon, maintaining a 20 m spacing between parties:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the two No 1s search a 2m wide path to the 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>left of the Setting Out Party's path or preceding Breaching Party's path, as applicable:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) No 1s search side by side, each searching 1m of the 2m wide path (2) starting from the centre of the path and working outwards, the No 1s look / feel for mines and prod for buried mines using the prodder drill <p>Note: If speed is essential and the enemy is either known not to be employing APers mines or mines have sufficient metallic content to ensure detection, the option exists for the No 1s to search for buried mines using the mine detector drill instead of the prodder drill.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (3) No 1s neutralize (APers mines only), mark and bypass mines. Personnel not involved in neutralizing an APers mine cease work and adopt a prone position when an APers mine is being neutralized <ol style="list-style-type: none"> b. No 3 works 5m ahead of the No 1s on the path breached by the Setting Out Party or the preceding Breaching Party, feeling for trip wires across the 2m wide path. No 3 deals with any trip wires using the trip wire reaction drill c. IC follows 1 m behind No 1s, pinning down their tapes and providing them with mine markers. Time permitting, IC may prod, uncover, neutralize (APers mines) and mark buried mines identified by the No 1s d. the two No 3s follow 5m behind the IC. Using the mine detector drill, they search 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>for buried mines missed by the No 1s and uncover and mark all buried mines, leaving the mines for explosive disposal</p> <p>e. when the party reaches a control tape or the finishing tape, the IC Breaching Party reports to the IC Breaching Team. If at the finishing tape, the party joins the Setting Out Party.</p> <p>6. Explosive Charge Party prepares mines for destruction, working from the near side to the far side of the minefield:</p> <p>a. once the rearmost Breaching Party has completed its search of a 50m section of the lane, the IC Explosive Charge Party and three charge placers move into that section and place a basic charge on or beside (as applicable to the mine) each mine, leaving the mine markers in place</p> <p>b. when charge placers have finished a section plus 20m, the remaining personnel in the party lay out a trunk line from the near to far side, attaching the charges to the trunk line and picking up mine markers as they advance</p> <p>c. when all charges are connected along the entire length of the breach, the IC follows his party out of the lane to the RV and reports to the IC Breaching Team.</p> <p>7. The IC Breaching Team orders the connection of the trunk line to an initiation set / blasting machine and fires the charges on order of the overall tactical commander.</p> <p>8. The Lane Marking Party completes initial</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>marking of the lane to include, as a minimum, the entrance funnel, left hand lane markers and right hand lane entrance and exit markers.</p> <p>9. For a 1m wide lane to support a dismounted attack, a Setting Out Party searches the 1m wide path, and a three man Explosive Charge Party places charges on mines and lays out the ring main. The IC Explosive Charge Party also acts as the IC Breaching Team.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

4323 C - CONTRUCT AN ELEVATED CABLE SYSTEM

ELEMENT: PNR PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon receives orders to construct an elevated cable system to move a number of loads across a wet gap. Orders include the time by which the system must be operational. A reconnaissance has been previously conducted and the reconnaissance report and design proforma are available. The system consists of a sheer at one end and a gyn at the other. The necessary stores and equipment are available. Loads are not to exceed 100 kg. The gap to be crossed is no larger than 50m. Site conditions are good. No iterations of training on this task are performed under NBC conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The elevated cable system is constructed IAW with the reconnaissance and design proforma provided, and within the time allotted.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 , 'Battle Procedure.'			
2. The required materials are ordered and a suitable rendezvous established.			
3. A platoon representative marries up with the resources element providing the rigging stores and equipment at the rendezvous, inspects the stores and equipment, and addresses any deficiencies.			
4. The platoon establishes and coordinates task site security IAW BTS 3001 , 'Maintain Operations Security.'			
5. The site commander prepares the site for construction as necessary (eg. marks out locations for anchorage, gyn and sheer, stores area, etc).			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>6. The site commander supervises the construction of the elevated cable system IAW the design provided, ensuring that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. safety precautions are observed throughout, including water safety b. concurrent activity is maintained throughout c. proper knots and lashings are employed throughout d. anchorages are properly installed e. gyn and sheer are properly constructed and erected f. block and tackle systems are properly constructed g. main cable is properly rigged and tensioned. <p>7. The platoon crosses the load(s), ensuring positive control is maintained throughout using the load hauling ropes.</p> <p>8. The platoon commander submits task status reports to higher HQ IAW unit SOPs.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

4324 C - CONSTRUCT A COMBAT ROAD

ELEMENT: PNR PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon receives orders to construct a combat road. Orders include the start and end points, lane requirements, the traffic density (vehicle types and frequency), and the time by which construction must be complete. Manpower, integral platoon equipment (eg. APC Dozer, chain saw) and construction material/expedient surfacing, as required, are available. No iterations of training on this task are performed under NBC conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon constructs the combat road, providing unimpeded passage of the traffic for which it was designed, no later than the time specified in orders. The platoon maintains the road until traffic has ceased.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>1. The platoon commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure.'</p> <p>2. The reconnaissance party plans and conducts a reconnaissance IAW BTS 3011, 'Conduct Engineer / Pioneer Reconnaissance':</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. to best ability, determines trafficability of existing terrainb. determines the most economical road alignmentc. acquires information on improvements required including minor dozer blade and chain saw work, expedient surfacing requirements and culvert construction.			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>3. The platoon commander plans the construction:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. determines construction scope of work based on reconnaissance information b. coordinates support external to the platoon (eg. expedient surfacing and / or construction materials). <p>4. The platoon commander establishes task site security IAW BTS 3001, ‘Maintain Operations Security.’</p> <p>5. The platoon constructs a combat road:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. establishes the start and finish points as specified in orders. Follows the general alignment determined during the reconnaissance b. clears the road of any obstacles which will impede vehicular movement c. constructs the specified number of lanes, normally one lane as wide as the widest vehicle using the road plus 1m d. no route grade exceeds the capability of the expected vehicles. Makes minor route centreline changes to correct excessive grades e. installs expedient surfacing, such as corduroy surfacing, IAW the orders issued or the surface situation. <p>6. The platoon constructs / sets culverts:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the platoon prepares the culvert site for construction: 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>(1) positions the culvert(s) IAW the drainage design (eg. angle of culvert in relation to road, exact location, etc)</p> <p>(2) ensures the culvert inlet elevation is at or below the bottom of the existing natural drainage channel or ditch</p> <p>(3) ensures that the culvert slope is at the same slope as the stream bed</p> <p>b. the platoon prepares the culvert trench:</p> <p>(1) ensures the culvert trench has the proper slope and is deep enough for the bed, culvert, and cover</p> <p>(2) ensures the cover is one-half the diameter of the culvert or 0.3m, whichever is larger</p> <p>(3) ensures the trench width provides for the culvert diameter, side spacing, and if multiple pipes are installed, inter-culvert spacing. Side and inter-culvert spacing is a minimum of one half of the culvert diameter</p> <p>(4) installs shoring prior to emplacing the culvert if the trench is deeper than the shoulder height of the soldiers in it, and the sides are not cut back to their natural angle of repose</p> <p>c. the platoon installs the culvert:</p> <p>(1) ensures ditch has no standing or</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>running water in it when installation begins</p> <p>(2) ensures culvert bed, made of granular fill, is placed</p> <p>(3) the platoon constructs and sets culverts IAW manufacturer's or technical specifications</p> <p>(4) the outfall of culverts extends 0.6m beyond road embankments</p> <p>d. the platoon constructs culvert headwalls, wingwalls and endwalls and silt traps IAW drainage design.</p> <p>7. The platoon maintains the combat road to ensure trafficability until traffic has ceased:</p> <p>a. fills any major potholes with suitable material</p> <p>b. inspects and repairs expedient surfacing</p> <p>c. maintains adequate drainage.</p> <p>8. The platoon commander submits task status reports to higher HQ IAW unit SOPs.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

4325 C - CONSTRUCT A SNOW/ICE ROAD AND / OR AN ICE BRIDGE

ELEMENT: PNR PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon receives orders to construct and maintain a snow/ice road and / or an ice bridge. Orders include the type and amount of traffic expected, the length of time that the road and / or bridge is to remain open, and the time by which construction must be complete. No iterations of training of this task are required under NBC conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon constructs the road and / or bridge within the time allotted and maintains the structure to meet the required specifications. Traffic interruptions are not caused by deficiencies in either construction or maintenance.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>1. The platoon commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001, ‘Battle Procedure.’</p> <p>2. The reconnaissance party commander plans and conducts a reconnaissance IAW BTS 3011, ‘Conduct Engineer / Pioneer Reconnaissance’:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. plans the reconnaissance:<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) for ice construction, determines the minimum ice thickness required for the traffic to be supported (weight of vehicles)(2) determines the geometric standards for the road to be constructedb. conducts the reconnaissance and designs			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>the structure:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) sites runway or road alignment (2) for ice construction: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) measures the ice thickness at intervals of 200m along the alignment by boring a hole through the ice, and locating the under-side of the ice with a stick with a transversely projecting nail (b) determines the minimum 'effective ice thickness' of the existing ice. Uses only the upper ice layer to determine 'effective ice thickness' if water is present between two ice layers (c) determines the minimum ice thickness required to support the anticipated traffic (d) determines the effort required (eg. snow removal, flooding, or reinforcement) to achieve the required 'effective ice thickness' (e) for ice roads, determines effort required to construct smooth approaches from the shore to the ice surface to allow traffic to move onto the ice with a minimum of impact (f) for ice bridges, determines the 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>gap width, the type of bridge to be constructed, mooring/breast line and anchorage requirements, and sawing effort required.</p> <p>3. The platoon commander establishes task site security IAW BTS 3001, ‘Maintain Operations Security.’</p> <p>4. The platoon constructs a snow road:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. agitates the snow using harrows or drags with short scarifier blades or points until a light roller can be supported b. compacts the snow using towed drum rollers, either smooth or ribbed (eg. culverts filled to increase the weight), making several passes over an area c. allows a ‘setting up period’ to permit bonding by the snow particles d. repeats steps a through c allowing a ‘setting up period’ each time and increasing the weight of the roller if possible (three treatments, at intervals of four hours, give the same result as ten successive processing’s without a time interval). <p>OR</p> <p>5. The platoon constructs an ice road:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. increases the ice thickness to achieve the ‘effective ice thickness’ required to support the intended traffic using one of the following methods: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) removes any snow and allows the ice 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>to thicken naturally over time</p> <p>(2) constructs snow dikes spaced 2.5 times the road width apart and pumps water onto the ice surface between the dikes, allowing the water to freeze in 25mm layers (about 2 hours at -15°C). Repeats the process until the required thickness is achieved. The carrying capacity of this induced ice is only one-half that of natural ice</p> <p>(3) reinforces the ice by flooding successive layers of snow (eg. three layers of snow-crete), straw (in single or three layers) or wire matting, brush, timbers/planks, etc until the required thickness is achieved</p> <p>b. constructs smooth approaches from the shore to the ice surface to allow traffic to move onto the ice with a minimum of impact.</p>			
<p>OR</p> <p>6. The platoon constructs an ice bridge:</p> <p>a. the bridge section is properly anchored to the shore by means of mooring / breast lines and holdfast anchorage. Mooring / breast lines are properly secured to the bridge section</p> <p>b. for fixed ice bridges, the required depth of cut (6 to 8m) is made into the banks on both sides of the open channel to fix the bridge section in place (eg. prevent it from being</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>swept away by the current)</p> <p>c. skewed ice bridges are constructed when the ice is thin and crumbles under the impact of the floating section or when erosion of the ice by the water current is a problem.</p> <p>7. The platoon maintains a snow road:</p> <p>a. after a fresh snowfall, the surface is not plowed but is rolled to compact the new snow. Rolling begins as soon as 75mm of snow has fallen and continues throughout the snowfall</p> <p>b. continually builds up the surface until it is higher than the surrounding area to alleviate any drifting problem caused by the creation of a 'trough' type surface during compaction. Erects snow fences to prevent drifting if the surface cannot be built up.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>8. The platoon maintains an ice road:</p> <p>a. ice thickness is checked twice a week at temperatures between -12°C and -4°C, and daily at temperatures above -4°C. New holes must be drilled for each measurement. The ice thickness is measured at intervals of 200 metres along the alignment, and at any locations where ice conditions change</p> <p>b. Cracks:</p> <p>(1) under all conditions, the ice is watched closely and inspected at least once a day. If progressive</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>cracking occurs the number of operations per day or the loads are reduced. If no progressive cracking is evident, the number of operations or loads may be increased</p> <p>(2) cracks which appear in the ice, if still considered usable, are repaired by:</p> <p>(a) Bridging. Rigid bridging members can be used to bridge the gap, if frozen in place. To avoid breaking off the loaded edges of the cracks, up to two times the minimum ice thickness is required</p> <p>(b) Flooding. ‘Dry’ cracks (eg. not extending to the water) can be filled with a water and snow mixture. Holes can be drilled to water level, and water pumped over cracks. (Holes must not be drilled within 5m of banks of cleared snow, as the ice surface in this area is usually deflected below free water level)</p> <p>(3) contraction cracks which appear perpendicular to the road axis are repaired by flooding or bridging</p> <p>(4) if cracks occur parallel to the roadway, the road is relocated at once</p> <p>c. snow removal is conducted to reduce</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>moving resistance and to prevent thawing action caused by insulating effect of snow</p> <p>d. slush is removed by flooding and freezing</p> <p>e. if operations have to proceed under average air temperatures higher than 0°C on fresh water ice, and higher than -2°C on sea ice, the required ice thickness is gradually increased by up to 20% more (or loads are reduced by 1/3) until deterioration of surface conditions (slush or candling) prevent further operations. Operations are suspended if maximum air temperature exceeds 4°C</p> <p>f. during and for 3-5 days (depending on the ice thickness) after a rapid temperature drop, the minimum ice thickness is based on the average air temperature before the temperature drop. If the average daily temperature drops 4°C per day, the minimum ice thickness during the above period is increased by 40%, or loads are reduced by 1/2, and if the average daily temperature drops 8°C per day the minimum ice thickness is doubled, or the load is reduced by 3/4. If the total temperature drop exceeds 8°C or if the temperature drops more rapidly than 8°C per day, causing severe thermal stressing or cracking of the ice, temporary load restrictions are imposed</p> <p>g. the following precautions are observed to prevent resonance in the ice sheet:</p> <p>(1) over shallow water (eg. depth less than 50 times ice thickness) speeds</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>are restricted to between 13 and 40 kph</p> <p>(2) over deep water (depth greater than 50 times ice thickness) speeds are restricted to less than 16 kph</p> <p>(3) movement (eg driving or taxiing) parallel to a shoreline at a distance of one load influence radius is avoided. Movement is permitted further away than 2 influence radii, nearer than 1/2 influence radius, or at an angle of 45° or more to the shore</p> <p>h. the minimum distance between loads is maintained.</p> <p>OR</p> <p>9. The platoon maintains an ice bridge:</p> <p>a. monitors the erosion of the underside of the ice bridge over time</p> <p>b. monitors the condition of moorings and anchorage</p> <p>c. replaces the bridge section ice as required.</p> <p>10. The platoon commander submits task status reports to higher HQ IAW unit SOPs.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

4326 B/C - CONSTRUCT A HELICOPTER LANDING SITE

ELEMENT: PNR SECT / PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section / platoon receives orders to construct a helicopter landing site. Orders include the general location of the site, type and number of helicopters that will use the site, size and shape of the landing points within the site, usage (day/night and duration), site marking requirements, and time by which construction must be completed. Heavy equipment and dust control materials are available. No iterations of training on this task are performed under MOPP 3 Mask.

TASK STANDARD:

The section / platoon constructs the helicopter landing site to the required specifications within the time allotted.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>1. The section / platoon commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure.'</p> <p>2. The reconnaissance party commander plans and conducts the reconnaissance IAW BTS 3011, 'Conduct Engineer / Pioneer Reconnaissance':</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. plans the reconnaissance:<ul style="list-style-type: none">(1) determines the minimum landing site size based on the number of landing points required, their shape and size, and the centre to centre separation distance required between landing points(2) assesses the requirement for further dispersion of landing points based on the tactical situation			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>(3) performs a map study to identify possible landing sites in the area of the general location provided in orders</p> <p>(4) marries up with a representative of the aviation unit accompanying the reconnaissance party, if available</p> <p>b. conducts a reconnaissance of potential landing sites to determine the following:</p> <p>(1) availability of ground access routes to/from the site, including any improvement requirements</p> <p>(2) site suitability based on ground slope for day or night use</p> <p>(3) site layout</p> <p>(4) work required to clear obstructions from the approach and exit paths, oriented into the wind, for day or night use</p> <p>(5) work required at each landing point to clear the 'cleared to ground level' area and to clear the outer ring area of obstacles over 0.6 metres high</p> <p>(6) work required to provide the required 'hard surface' area at the centre of each landing point (eg. expedient surfacing, dust control)</p> <p>(7) camouflage requirements.</p>			
<p>3. The section / platoon seeks authority, via the chain of command to the supported aviation unit, to waive any</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>landing site preparation requirements which cannot be met.</p> <p>4. The section / platoon commander establishes / coordinates task site security IAW BTS 3001, ‘Maintain Operations Security.’</p> <p>5. The section / platoon constructs the selected landing site:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. lays out the landing site to include the boundaries of the landing site, the orientation and width of the helicopter approach / exit path, and any support areas b. clears obstructions from the helicopter approach / exit path to the required height c. clears the inner circle area to ground level, and obstacles over 0.6m high from outer ring at each landing point d. prepares the ‘hard surface’ area at the centre of each landing point e. constructs camouflage f. marks the landing site g. executes any required improvements to ground access routes. <p>6. The section / platoon commander submits task status reports to higher headquarters IAW unit SOPs.</p>			

I4371 B - CONSTRUCTS IMPROVISED WATER CROSSING DEVICES

ELEMENT: PNR SECT

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section, to include personnel, personal kit and vehicle, is required to cross a slow moving body of water without the assistance of boats or bridging assets. The vehicle to be crossed is ILTIS or LSVW. Sufficient materials are available to construct a gasoline drum raft or float. No enemy interference is expected. No iterations of this task are performed under NBC conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The section successfully crosses its personnel, kit and vehicle without any losses. Construction of the improvised vehicle-crossing device does not exceed five hours.

Note: Peacetime training safety measures are observed IAW B-GL-304-003/TS-0A1, Training Safety, while training near, on, or in water.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The section commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 'Battle Procedure.' 2. Orders include what devices are to be constructed and a clear assignment of construction tasks to section personnel. 3. Improvised crossing devices are constructed IAW the technical standard applicable to the selected device and all lashings are secure. 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

PROTECTION

5001 D - CROSS A CONTAMINATED AREA

ELEMENT: COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section / platoon has been directed to cross a contaminated area to continue its mission. The higher HQ has provided the time by which the contaminated area must be crossed and, in the case of nuclear contamination, the maximum exposure dose. For chemical contamination, the type of agent is not known. Bypassing the contaminated area is not possible.

TASK STANDARD:

The section / platoon crosses the contaminated area, without losses of personnel or equipment due to contamination, in the time specified and does not exceed the maximum exposure dose. The higher HQ receives the appropriate NBC report from the section / platoon.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. If directed to cross a radiologically contaminated area, the section / platoon prepares for movement: a. takes actions to provide extra shielding (such as using wet sandbags on floor) b. stows externally carried equipment inside vehicles or covers it with protective material kits, tarps, plastic sheeting, or similar materials c. checks RADIAC instruments d. assumes MOPP 3 Mask e. closes and secures vehicle hatches / access			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>points</p> <p>f. activates NBC over-pressurization systems.</p> <p>2. If directed to cross a chemically or biologically contaminated area, a section / platoon prepares for movement:</p> <p>a. stows externally carried equipment inside vehicles or covers it with protective material kits, tarps, plastic sheeting, or similar materials</p> <p>b. assumes MOPP 3 Mask</p> <p>c. attaches chemical detector paper to personnel and vehicles to provide warning of chemical contamination</p> <p>d. closes and secures vehicle hatches / access points</p> <p>e. activates NBC over-pressurization systems.</p> <p>3. Section / platoon crosses the contaminated area:</p> <p>a. conducts movement along route designated by commander</p> <p>b. uses waypoints to assist in navigation</p> <p>c. avoids stirring up dust, if possible</p> <p>d. increases interval and lateral dispersion between vehicles, if terrain permits</p> <p>e. if applicable, monitors RADIAC instruments for radiation exposure and reports OEG information to the commander IAW SOP</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> f. if applicable, monitors CAM, and three-way detection paper g. ensure main armament muzzle cover is in place h. observe animals and foliage. <p>4. Section / platoon exits the contaminated area:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. if identifiable, report on the exit to the commander b. submits NBC-4 report containing radiation and / or chemical / biological data c. if NBC monitoring readings are negative, requests permission from commander to initiate unmasking procedures, or initiates unmasking IAW orders or unit SOP d. zeros radiacmeters, if applicable e. conducts coordination for operational decontamination with commander f. continues the mission. 			

5002 B/C/D - DECONTAMINATE**ELEMENT: SECT / PL/COY****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The section / platoon has been contaminated by a nuclear, chemical, or biological source and is directed to conduct decontamination. Decontaminants, equipment, and new IPE are available.

TASK STANDARD:

The section / platoon completes operational and thorough (coy level) decontamination. The section / platoon decontaminates without sustaining additional casualties to personnel or equipment, and without spreading contamination.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Personnel carry out Immediate Decontamination Drill (ID Drill). 2. Section / platoons conduct chemical / biological operational decontamination: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. soldiers decontaminate personal weapons, paying particular attention to plastic handguards and stocks b. soldiers avoid sharp objects that could cause rips or tears in garments. 3. Section / platoons conduct radiological decontamination: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. exposed soldiers brush off any dry contaminants from their IPE, mask carrier, clothing, and gear b. soldiers avoid spreading contamination into 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>clean areas.</p> <p>4. Conducts operator decontamination as directed by section / platoon commanders:</p> <p>a. section / platoons conduct chemical / biological decontamination:</p> <p>(1) operational decontamination begins within 15 minutes after personal decontamination is completed using the three or 20 litre decontamination apparatus</p> <p>(2) section / platoons scrub decontaminant onto contaminated surfaces and leave it in place at least 30 minutes before removal</p> <p>(3) section / platoons decontaminate only the surfaces section / platoon must touch while operating their equipment</p> <p>b. Section / platoons conduct radiological decontamination:</p> <p>(1) section / platoons use available items (brooms, branches) to remove contamination</p> <p>(2) water is effective for removing contamination, but runoff must be strictly controlled. Use ditches to contain runoff</p> <p>(3) section / platoons remove gross contamination such as mud, dirt, or dust from vehicles using available</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>items (sticks, shovels, brooms)</p> <p>(4) section / platoons mark the contaminated area.</p> <p>5. Section / platoon commander coordinates and plans for thorough decontamination:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. requests decontamination support through the higher commander b. verifies location of the decontamination site and movement routes to the site c. verifies arrival time at decontamination site d. coordinates with the higher commander for relief from current mission e. issues movement order and decontamination instructions to the section / platoon IAW orders or unit SOP. <p>6. Section / platoon conducts tactical movement to decontamination site and prepares for thorough decontamination:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. moves to the marshalling area (taking required precautions if route is contaminated) b. assumes assigned position within the higher unit perimeter defence c. establishes and maintains local security IAW SOP or higher commander's direction d. prepares vehicles for decontamination: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) secures all external equipment 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>(2) covers the main armament muzzle</p> <p>(3) removes vegetation used as camouflage</p> <p>(4) removes large amounts of mud (if necessary)</p> <p>(5) closes all vehicle hatches</p> <p>e. section / platoon performs vehicle decontamination:</p> <p>(1) ensures vehicle hatches are closed and secured</p> <p>(2) follows guidance of site OIC / NCOIC or decontamination section / platoon in moving vehicles to and through decontamination site</p> <p>(3) assists decontamination section / platoon in decontaminating vehicles as required</p> <p>(4) when decontamination is completed, moves vehicles to the designated holding area upwind from decontamination site as directed by OIC / NCOIC</p> <p>f. Note: After vehicle decontamination is complete, section / platoons move to the NBC equipment exchange site and repeat the process outlined below.</p> <p>7. Under supervision of section / platoon commanders, site OIC / NCOIC, or decontamination team, section / platoon conduct NBC protective clothing exchange. (Note: section / platoon complete the</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>following steps in sequence, using the buddy system):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. decontaminate and drop gear (weapon, helmet, webbing, mask carrier and personal items b. decontaminate hood and gloves and roll up hood c. remove NBC suit/overshoes d. remove NBC gloves. <p>8. If personnel decontamination includes shower then the soldier proceeds into a clear area where he can unmask. If the decontamination does not include a shower, the soldier remains masked and carries on with the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. put on clean NBC suit (Note: clean soldier pulls clean NBC suit from bag without touching the outside of the bag) b. put on clean overboots / gloves (Note: clean soldier pulls clean overboots from bag without touching the outside of the bag, puts on overboots, and repeats the process for gloves) c. secure hood d. secure gear e. Note: soldiers reverse buddy roles and repeat NBC protective clothing exchange process. <p>9. Section / platoon commander reports decontamination status to higher HQ.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

BTS 5003B – CONDUCT NBC SURVEY

ELEMENT: SURVEY TEAM

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 (circle)

CONDITIONS

IAW orders or based on the tactical situation, the team leader will conduct a NBC Survey. The company has the ability to establish at least one NBC survey team. NBC survey equipment is available and operational. The company may be ordered to conduct an NBC survey of its immediate vicinity, a proposed new location or a limited route or area.

TASK STANDARD

The company’s NBC survey team(s) determine contaminated areas, sign them, mark safe routes and correctly identify NBC agents. The squadron submits accurate and timely NBC reports IAW SOPs.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The NBC survey team leaders and the NBC NCO plan an NBC survey: a. determine areas of priority and approximate distance between checks b. for radioactive contamination, consider previous exposure of survey teams when establishing the turn back dose and dose rate. 2. NBC survey teams are briefed on: a. tactical / enemy situation b. specific areas of interest on which to concentrate c. specific recording and reporting requirements			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. for radioactive contamination, turn-back dose and dose rate and actions to take if reached e. marking requirements. <p>3. NBC survey teams conduct survey:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. each team prepares vehicles and equipment b. contamination is checked for, recorded and reported IAW SOPs c. contaminated areas are marked d. for radioactive contamination, the turn back dose and / or dose rate are not exceeded without higher authority. <p>4. NBC survey teams perform decontamination as required IAW 5002B/C/D 'Decontaminate'.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

5004 B/C - DEFEND AGAINST AIR ATTACK

ELEMENT: SECT / PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section / platoon is tactically deployed, either stationary or on the move. Both hostile and friendly aircraft are operating in the general area. Note that this BTS is, in part, an evaluation tool for Section Battle Drill Two and Platoon Battle Drill One, and should be read in combination with BTS [5005](#), 'React to Contact / Direct Fire / Indirect Fire.'

TASK STANDARD:

Enemy aircraft do not surprise the section / platoon. The section / platoon takes effective action to prevent or minimize losses to air attack.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The section / platoon employs air defence measures: a. all available resources are used (camouflage, concealment, cover, dispersion, etc) to hide elements and limit vulnerability b. air attack alarms are established and rehearsed c. immediate action drills upon sighting enemy or unidentified aircraft are established d. weapon control status is promulgated e. air sentries are assigned with specific sectors covering 360 degrees			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> f. aircraft are visually identified g. air attack alarm is given IAW SOPs h. passive defence - if undetected, the section / platoon holds fire to avoid revealing its position i. active defence - if attacked, section / platoon engages immediately with all available weapons within effective ranges j. air sentries continue to observe their assigned sectors for additional aircraft k. based on enemy's expected use of chemical weapons, and the type of rounds or bombs impacting, or indications of spray, personnel perform NBC immediate action drill l. section / platoon reports all enemy and unidentified aircraft actions to higher HQ. 			
<p>2. The section / platoon uses air defence measures when stationary:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. shiny items are covered or shaded, particularly windshields and optics b. defensive positions are constructed to protect personnel and vulnerable equipment c. battle positions are approached from the rear to avoid leaving tracks and destroying cover d. personnel occupy defensive positions e. vehicles hide or adopt turret down or hull 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>down positions whenever possible</p> <p>f. vehicular movement is limited</p> <p>g. if detected or attacked, commander evaluates situation and moves section / platoon if tactical situation and direction from higher HQ permits.</p> <p>3. The section / platoon uses air defence measures in a convoy:</p> <p>a. all personnel are briefed by the convoy commander</p> <p>b. vehicles and equipment are camouflaged before moving out</p> <p>c. vehicle interval is selected based on instructions, mission, terrain, threat, etc</p> <p>d. individual and crew-served weapons are alternated throughout the convoy to cover 360 degrees</p> <p>e. upon early warning:</p> <p>(1) vehicles disperse to shoulders of the road (off road if possible)</p> <p>(2) vehicles adopt covered and concealed positions if terrain permits</p> <p>(3) troops dismount and take up firing positions</p> <p>f. if attacked when cover is not available, vehicles maintain or increase interval and use evasive driving techniques.</p> <p>4. The section / platoon uses air defence measures</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>when moving cross country:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. maintains vehicle interval specified in the Op O b. staggers vehicles to avoid linear patterns c. avoids moving and leaving tracks through open areas, mud and fields d. upon early warning, section / platoon halts in place to avoid detection when in an open area e. if detected, section / platoon disperses and if possible vehicles move to covered and concealed positions. <p>5. Once air attack is over, the section / platoon conducts quick consolidation and continues with its mission.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

5005 B/C - REACT TO CONTACT / DIRECT FIRE / INDIRECT FIRE

ELEMENT: SECT / PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section / platoon is moving or stationary. The section / platoon contacts the enemy, or receives fire from enemy individual, crew-served weapons, or indirect weapons. Note that this BTS is an evaluation tool for Section Battle Drill Two and Platoon Battle Drill One.

TASK STANDARD:

The section / platoon takes appropriate reaction to contact / direct fire / indirect fire.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The section / platoon lead element comes under contact / direct enemy fire: a. lead section / platoon element takes action: (1) executes Section Battle Drill Two - 'Reaction to Effective Enemy Fire,' and Section Battle Drill Three - 'Locates the Enemy' (2) immediately returns fire to destroy or suppress the enemy and takes up the nearest covered positions, employing smoke if necessary (3) alerts the remainder of the section / platoon to the direction of the enemy, sending 'Contact Report' if necessary b. section / platoon commanders control			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>action:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) designate and coordinate fire using fire control orders: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Group (b) Range (c) Indication (d) Type of Fire (2) locate and engage known or suspected enemy positions with well-aimed fire (3) ensure personnel maintain contact with the personnel on their left and right (4) ensure personnel maintain contact with their section commanders and report the location of enemy positions (5) check the status of their personnel (6) send initial 'Contact Report' to the higher commander. <p>c. section / platoon commander moves up to the lead element in contact and:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) determines whether or not the section / platoon must move out of the killing zone (2) determines whether or not he can gain and maintain suppressive fires with his element already in contact 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>(based on the volume and accuracy of enemy fires against the element in contact)</p> <p>(3) makes an assessment of the situation:</p> <p>(a) identifies the location of the enemy position and obstacles</p> <p>(b) identifies the size of the enemy force engaging the unit in contact</p> <p>(c) identifies the vulnerable flanks</p> <p>(d) identifies covered and concealed flanking routes to the enemy position</p> <p>(4) determines the next course of action (for example: assault; clear bunker, woods, building, trench; bypass; break contact)</p> <p>(5) calls for and adjusts indirect fire as required</p> <p>(6) sends consolidated ‘Contact Report’ to the higher commander, is given course of action, or decides on course of action:</p> <p>(a) develops a plan</p> <p>(b) issues a Frag O</p> <p>(c) coordinates required support</p> <p>(7) continues with the mission.</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>2. The section / platoon observe indirect enemy fire:</p> <p>a. if moving:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) personnel and vehicles execute evasive action to avoid impact (2) crews drop down inside vehicles and close hatches (3) based on enemy's expected use of chemical weapons, and type of rounds impacting, personnel execute NBC Masking drill (4) continue to move out of impact area (5) commander sends a 'SHELREP' to the higher commander <p>b. if stationary:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) crews drop down inside vehicles and close hatches (2) based on enemy's expected use of chemical weapons, and type of rounds impacting, personnel execute NBC Masking drill (3) commander sends a 'SHELREP' to the higher commander (4) if indirect fire is effectively suppressing the section / platoon: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) if the mission permits, the section / platoon moves out of the impact area to adequate cover 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>(b) if the mission does not permit, the section / platoon adopts covered positions and continues with the mission</p> <p>(5) when the indirect fire stops, crews open vehicle hatches</p> <p>(6) if in MOPP 3 Mask, personnel remain in that state until the commander gives the 'all clear'</p> <p>(7) continue with the mission.</p>			

5006 B/C - REACT TO AMBUSH**ELEMENT: SECT / PL****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

A section / platoon is on the move, dismounted or mounted. The enemy initiates an ambush. Note that this BTS is an evaluation tool for Section Battle Drill Two and Platoon Battle Drill One, and should be read in combination with BTS [5005](#), 'React to Contact / Direct Fire / Indirect Fire.'

TASK STANDARD:

The section / platoon reacts immediately to the ambush by fighting through the ambush to a pre-planned RV, destroying or forcing the enemy to withdraw. The section / platoon continues follow-on operations.

Sub-Tasks and Standards		Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1.	Dismounted section / platoon reacts to an ambush:			
a.	immediately:			
	(1) daylight - return maximum suppressive fire, assume covered positions, and throw fragmentation and smoke grenades			
	(2) night - immediately move out of the killing zone, especially if the area is illuminated			
b.	section / platoon commander shouts applicable fire control and movement orders			
c.	fight through the ambush to a pre-planned RV using individual fire and movement			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>d. section / platoon commander maintains control</p> <p>e. section / platoon commander calls for indirect fire support:</p> <p>(1) to isolate the enemy</p> <p>(2) adjusts fire on any retreating enemy</p> <p>f. personnel not in the ambush kill zone take action:</p> <p>(1) identify enemy positions</p> <p>(2) initiate immediate suppressive fires against the enemy</p> <p>(3) take up covered positions</p> <p>(4) shift fires as the personnel in the kill zone assault through the ambush</p> <p>(5) move to the pre-planned RV</p> <p>g. the section / platoon commander accounts for all personnel and equipment after the enemy has withdrawn:</p> <p>(1) reorganizes as necessary IAW Section Battle Drill Seven and Platoon Battle Drill Three - 'Consolidation,' and IAW BTS 4305, 'Consolidate'</p> <p>(2) sends a 'Contact Report' to the next higher commander</p> <p>(3) continues the mission.</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>2. Mounted section / platoon reacts to an ambush:</p> <p>a. ambushed vehicles carry out the immediate action drill:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) sentries / gunners return maximum suppressive fire (2) the commander makes a rapid decision to drive out or attack (3) if the decision is to attack, then the personnel must dismount and attack: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) the commander shouts ‘Dismount Left (or Right)’ to indicate to which side of the vehicle to muster (b) sentries / gunners continue to fire on the enemy (c) sentries debus when troops are clear (d) all prepare to conduct a quick attack (4) conducts the attack (5) reorganizes as necessary IAW Section Battle Drill Seven and Platoon Battle Drill Three - ‘Consolidation,’ and IAW BTS 4305, ‘Consolidate’ (6) sends a ‘Contact Report’ to the next higher commander (7) continues the mission. 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

5008 C/D - DENY EQUIPMENT AND SUPPLIES

ELEMENT: PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

Friendly forces are evacuating their positions, and abandoning equipment and supplies, which they cannot remove. The platoon / company is ordered to deny future use of the equipment and supplies to the enemy. Orders or SOPs include the priority of equipment and supplies to be denied and the extent of denial to be achieved.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon / company denies equipment and supplies IAW orders / SOPs without injuring personnel. The time required is increased when performing this task in MOPP 3 Mask.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon / company commander develops a denial plan: a. prioritizes equipment / supplies to deny, and confirms the extent of denial to be achieved based on orders / SOPs and the equipment / supplies to be abandoned by friendly forces b. prioritizes components / parts to be denied for each type of equipment based on orders, SOPs, or technical references applicable to the type of equipment c. determines the method of denial based on the type of equipment / supplies involved and the manpower, time, explosives, and stores available d. ensures that equipment and supplies protected under the laws of armed conflict			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>(eg. medical supplies) are not destroyed.</p> <p>2. The platoon / company commander ensures that subordinates know their destruction assignments and priorities.</p> <p>3. The platoon / company destroys or disables equipment / supplies:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. destroys / disables equipment / supplies, including spare parts, in priority b. destroys / disables components / parts on each piece of equipment in priority c. if explosives are available, destroys equipment IAW the technical procedures established for each type of equipment, ensuring that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) for AFVs, ammunition is detonated simultaneously with explosive charges and all vehicle openings are closed (2) charges are in proper contact with the target (3) charges and firing circuits are properly prepared (4) personnel are warned and under suitable cover / at appropriate safety distance before firing. d. if explosives are not available, employs suitable improvised methods to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) destroying by direct fire (2) burning the vehicle by igniting the 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
fuel tank or using another incendiary device (3) smashing vital components with a sledge hammer or other suitable tool (4) draining hydraulic systems and cutting hoses (5) draining engines of oil and coolant and running them at full throttle until they seize (6) cutting tires. 4. The platoon / company commander reports to higher HQ once task is complete.			

5009 B/C/D - ESTABLISH A ROADBLOCK / CHECKPOINT**ELEMENT: SECT / PL / COY****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The element commander receives an order to construct a roadblock / checkpoint. The element is provided an open fire policy and rules of engagement (ROE); information as to the direction of the threat; suitable construction materials, tools, and transportation. Continuous operations (day and night) are envisioned. Civilian population and vehicles are in the area of operation.

TASK STANDARD:

The element plans and constructs the roadblock / checkpoint IAW higher commander's orders. The position and orientation of the barriers prevent passage, or limit entry and exit by personnel and vehicles into or from the specified area.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The element commander receives orders from higher HQ to establish a roadblock / checkpoint: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. clarifies any questions on the applicable open fire policy and ROE b. clarifies the purpose of the roadblock / checkpoint c. clarifies the type of roadblock / checkpoint (deliberate or hasty). 2. The element commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure.' 3. The element commander selects the roadblock/ checkpoint site: 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. sites tactically so that the roadblock / checkpoint cannot be seen more than a short distance away to prevent drivers from avoiding it b. culverts, bridges, deep cuts, sharp bends or dips in a road are ideal c. ensures that the roadblock / checkpoint is positioned so it is not a sudden surprise to drivers, giving them enough time to stop safely d. places elements of the roadblock / checkpoint in depth e. considers the balance between force protection and open fire policy when positioning roadblock / checkpoints f. develops security plan g. establish liaison with local civilian authorities. 			
<p>4. The element commander organizes the element to operate the roadblock / checkpoint on a continuous basis:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. assigns vehicle, and personnel search teams b. assigns close-in and far security or support-by-fire positions c. establishes a command and control cell to maintain communications with higher headquarters and control operations. 			
<p>5. The element constructs the roadblock / checkpoint according to the element commander's plan:</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>a. sets two parallel obstacles across the road. The barriers should have gaps negotiable only by slowly moving vehicles to allow the search or security teams to observe them closely</p> <p>b. ensures the number and separation of obstacles are based on the amount of traffic which enters the search area</p> <p>c. establishes a second position to hastily block personnel or vehicles attempting to flee</p> <p>d. marks all perimeter barriers, wires, and limits with warning signs. (signs in English, French, and the theatre native language should be used, if available.)</p> <p>e. establishes personnel search areas</p> <p>f. establishes vehicle search areas</p> <p>g. establishes security force positions</p> <p>h. prepares drop holes for searcher protection in the event of problems during the search and to prevent the searchers from masking the security element fires</p> <p>i. ensures there is adequate lighting for night operations</p> <p>j. ensures the civilian population understands the roadblock / checkpoint is a preventive and not a punitive measure</p> <p>k. ensures a translator is present at the roadblock / checkpoint.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>6. The element maintains security:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. ensures an team is positioned and concealed an appropriate distance (one hundred to several hundred meters) from the roadblock / checkpoint to prevent the escape of any vehicle or person attempting to turn back upon sighting the roadblock/checkpoint b. establishes a rest area for personnel near the search area so personnel can be assembled quickly as a reserve force c. searches all vehicles and personnel for certain items as directed by the element / higher commander d. develops measures for protecting searchers from possible explosives (if possible dig the vehicle search area into the ground to deflect the blasts upward) e. ensures that the close-in security team’s fields of fire are not masked f. uses sentries and patrols to prevent possible ambush. 			
<p>7. The element reacts to disruptions or hostile actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. if civilian personnel are impeding or attempting to dismantle a roadblock / checkpoint: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) reports the incident to higher HQ (2) requests assistance from local authorities to disperse or hold-back 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p style="text-align: center;">the crowd</p> <p>(3) IAW orders and the open fire policy, prevents the obstruction / destruction of the roadblock / checkpoint</p> <p>b. if vehicle(s) / personnel attempt to breach the roadblock / checkpoint without stopping, the element uses minimum force necessary to deter the or prevent the breach.</p> <p>8. The element keeps the enemy off balance by moving the roadblock / checkpoint, if the situation permits:</p> <p>a. establishes SOPs for moving the roadblock / checkpoint</p> <p>b. stores pre-packaged roadblock / checkpoint equipment on vehicles and rehearses setting up quickly</p> <p>c. makes roadblock / checkpoint handover procedures as detailed, such as BTS 4311, ‘Relief in Place’ illustrates.</p> <p>9. The element continually improves the roadblock / checkpoint as the time and situation permits.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

5011 B/C - CONSTRUCT A WIRE OBSTACLE

ELEMENT: SECT / PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITION

The local commander has ordered the construction of a wire obstacle to enhance the terrain in support of the defensive scheme. Orders to the element commander included the location, type, size, and construction completion time of the wire obstacle. The necessary field defence stores (Class IV) are available. Local protection is being provided by other elements of the subunit/unit.

TASK STANDARD:

The obstacle is completed to the required technical standard within the time allocated. The time required to perform this task is increased when executing it in MOPP 3 Mask.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>1. The element commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure':</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. work parties are assigned and tasks clearly identifiedb. the element arrives at the obstacle location equipped with wire handling gloves and the required construction stores (thumpers, wire cutters, windlassing sticks) <p>2. The obstacle is constructed within the following time standards (Note: Construction rates are the day / night rates for a section sized element expressed in minutes per 100 metres of fence. When a platoon sized element is employed, construction rates (except for the knife rest) will be approximately three times faster):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. low wire – 130/260			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. single concertina (normal) – 33/60 c. single concertina (simplified) – 11/22 d. triple concertina – 66/132 e. wiring Type 4 – 44/88 f. double Apron – 66/132 g. catwire Type 1 – 44/88 h. catwire Type 2 – 77/154 i. catwire Type 3 – 132/264 j. high wire – 132/264 k. American wire – 90/180 l. knife rest – 60/120 for a 3 to 5 metre long and 1.3 metre high knife rest m. concertina roadblock - 15/30 for a roadblock consisting of six rolls of concertina. 			
<p>3. The obstacle is constructed in accordance with the detailed technical specifications contained in B-GL-320-007/PT-001 and in accordance with the following common technical standards:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. work is performed, when possible, from the friendly side so that personnel are not separated from their shelters/trenches by the obstacle b. angle iron pickets are driven with the open side of the angle facing the enemy c. actions are taken to muffle the noise caused 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>by driving pickets, particularly at night</p> <p>d. pickets are properly spaced and driven to the required depth (0.5 metres for long pickets) in firm ground</p> <p>e. rows of pickets are staggered according to the type of obstacle being constructed</p> <p>f. concertinas are not over-extended (15-16 metres is normal)</p> <p>g. concertinas are properly joined at pickets</p> <p>h. ‘cattle fence’ wires (horizontal wires fixed to a row of pickets) are properly windlassed to pickets, however, sufficient slack is left in fence wires between each pair of pickets to allow windlassing of the fence wires to the concertinas</p> <p>i. diagonal wires (wires from short pickets to the top of long pickets) cross properly at pickets and properly windlassed</p> <p>j. fence wires are properly windlassed to concertinas midway between pickets or at the pickets, as appropriate to the type of wire obstacle</p> <p>k. for double apron fences, all apron wires are windlassed to diagonal wires wherever they cross</p> <p>l. if the obstacle is to be permanent, all short pickets at the base of diagonal wires should be driven into the ground completely</p> <p>m. the knife rest is securely lashed together</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>n. the concertina road block spans the complete width of the road, the two rows of wire are 10m apart, adjacent rolls are wired together, and roll ends are lightly anchored using pickets or half-filled sand bags.</p> <p>4. The element commander submits task status reports (eg. E102A ENGTASKREP) to higher headquarters IAW unit SOP.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

5013 B/C - LAY / LIFT A PROTECTIVE MINEFIELD

ELEMENT: SECT / PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

Intelligence reports have indicated a need for increased perimeter defence. The local commander has submitted to higher a report to lay a protective minefield and authorization has been received. The element has subsequently been assigned the task of laying a mixed protective minefield consisting of DM21 anti-tank (AT) mines and M18A1 Claymore Defensive Weapon Systems (DWS). Orders to the element commander included the minefield location, pattern (random or row), whether mines are to be surface laid or buried, number or mine rows and mine spacing (minimum of 6 metres), quantity, type and location of lanes, fencing requirements, and the time by which the minefield is to be laid. The required mines (Class V) and minefield fencing stores (Class IV) have been dumped on the battle position, but the mines have not been removed from their crate(s). Local protection is being provided by other elements of the subunit/unit.

TASK STANDARD:

The minefield is laid, fenced, reported and accurately recorded within the time allocated. All mines can be located using the CF947 protective minefield record. The minefield is lifted within the time allocated. There are no friendly casualties during laying or lifting. The time required to perform this task is increased when executing it under NBC conditions.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The element commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 , 'Battle Procedure': a. mine laying and fencing parties are assigned and tasks clearly identified b. the element arrives at the minefield location with the required setting out and mine			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>laying stores and hand tools (eg. shovels, thumper and / or sledgehammer for pickets, wire cutters) necessary to lay the minefield.</p> <p>2. According to the pattern of laying to be employed, the minefield is set out:</p> <p>a. random pattern:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) the position and type of each mine is clearly marked before laying begins (2) personnel are assigned laying tasks either individually or in pairs (3) instructions to each individual/pair specify clearly the route to be followed in and out of the minefield and the order in which mines are to be laid (lay tapes to mark safe routes at night) <p>b. row pattern:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) reference points (landmarks, bearings) are selected (2) routes to/from the minefield are selected (3) landmarks and end row markers are set out, and row(s) are marked with signals cable, white mine tape, or other suitable material (4) lanes or gaps are set out, and the centre-line of patrol lanes are marked with signals cable or cord, fastened to spikes driven flush with the 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p style="text-align: center;">ground</p> <p style="text-align: center;">(5) mines/fencing stores are distributed.</p> <p>3. AT mines are unpacked and fused. Empty crates are used as mine bases as required, or are disposed of.</p> <p>4. If ordered, perimeter fencing is erected:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. fence is erected in a clockwise manner starting at the near left hand corner leaving a gap in the rear side fence until mine laying is complete b. fencing party keeps ahead of the leading mine laying party c. existing fences are used where available d. enemy side fence is not obvious to the enemy but is visible enough to those who know its approximate position e. fence does not conform to the shape of the minefield, nor does it give away its length/depth (eg. is not sited at a constant distance from the nearest mine and does not run on the same bearing as the outer mine rows) f. fence is sited a minimum of 15 metres from the nearest mine g. fence consists of a minimum of a single strand or wire approximately waist high suspended on pickets about 15 metres apart h. fence is signed with mine signs located not more than 50 metres apart 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>i. if for any reason the laying party is withdrawn during laying, the perimeter fence is completed and then reopened when laying restarts.</p> <p>5. The element maintains the following typical mine laying rates (Note: Laying rates are based on a platoon-sized element, working by day without interference. Mines are already removed from their crate(s) and are hand-carried no more than 200 metres. Laying rates at night are normally half the daylight laying rate. When a section sized element is employed, laying rates will be approximately one third of platoon laying rate):</p> <p>a. 40 buried DM21 AT mines per hour</p> <p>b. 80 surface laid DM21 AT mines per hour</p> <p>c. 40 M18A1 Claymore DWS per hour.</p> <p>6. The element maintains the standards for the setting and arming of individual mines.</p> <p>a. if buried, holes for individual AT mines are dug deep and wide enough and the bottom is tamped so that the top of the mine is 50mm below ground level, 'bridging' of the hole by a tank/APC track is prevented, and so as to provide a firm base for the mine</p> <p>b. appropriate measures are taken to ensure the proper actuation of mines in unfavourable conditions (eg. laid on foundations/bases and / or in waterproof bags)</p> <p>c. mines are armed using the correct procedures, when ordered by the officer/NCO in charge, and under</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>supervision</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. all mines, whether surface laid or buried, are camouflaged to greatest extent possible e. M18A1 Claymore DWS are set in the command-detonated mode only. <p>7. The element performs random pattern mine laying:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the distance between each laying party, if possible is never less than 20 metres b. mines are armed starting on the enemy side and working back to the friendly side. <p>OR</p> <p>8. The element performs row pattern mine laying:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. rows are laid starting on the enemy side and working back to the friendly side b. the element commander paces along the pre-selected row(s) and indicates to each soldier the location of his or her mine c. mines are not located within the required safe distance from any lanes/gaps d. if further trips to get more mines are required, a guide remains at the beginning of the row until it is completed. <p>9. Any remaining perimeter fencing and marking is completed.</p> <p>10. The element commander submits task status reports to higher headquarters IAW unit SOP.</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>11. The element commander completes the Protective Minefield Record (DND 2147) in accordance with the instructions on the reverse side of the form. If the minefield is of sufficient size and complexity, a Minefield Completion Report (DND 2109/E122D MINLAYREP, which includes the minefield record) may be completed in lieu of a Protective Minefield Record.</p> <p>12. The element conducts periodic inspections of the minefield to determine if there has been any interference caused by enemy action, artillery, animals or weather. Enemy interference is reported to higher. Any damage to perimeter fencing and marking is repaired.</p> <p>13. The element lifts the protective minefield:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. mines are located using the CF947 Protective Minefield Record and / or a mine detector. The individual who laid the mine recovers the same mine if possible b. mines are recovered starting from the friendly side of the minefield c. mines are disarmed using the correct procedures and removed from the minefield d. mines are cleaned and repacked for future use e. the minefield fencing and any markers (landmarks, end row markers, etc) are removed f. the element commander destroys the Protective Minefield Record, the Minefield Completion Report (DND 2109/E122D MINLAYREP, as applicable. <p>14. If the position is to be abandoned and the</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
minefield has not been previously fenced/marked, then the minefield is fenced/marked prior to final abandonment.			

5014 B - LAY A NUISANCE MINEFIELD**ELEMENT: PNR SECT****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The section is ordered to lay a nuisance minefield, designed to hinder the enemy's use of an area/route, or to reinforce another obstacle (eg. craters, abatis, etc). Orders include the location of the minefield, Class IV (field defences) and Class V (ammunition, including mines and explosives) allocation, any obstacle restrictions, fencing / marking requirements, and the time by which the minefield must be laid.

TASK STANDARD:

The minefield is designed and sited in accordance with the fundamentals of obstacle employment and the required obstacle intent. The minefield is laid and marked (if ordered) within the time allotted. All mines can be located using the minefield record. There are no friendly casualties from a failure to observe mine safety. The time required is increased when conducting this task under NBC conditions.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The section commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 'Battle Procedure.' 2. The section commander establishes / coordinates task site security IAW BTS 3001 , 'Maintain Operations Security': <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. sweeping the site for enemy b. establishing local defensive positions on site c. rehearsing alarms d. carrying personal weapons and equipment 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>during the task</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. maintaining camouflage, noise/light discipline, and MOPP level. <p>3. Section Commander conducts detailed siting of the minefield, ensuring that the fundamentals of obstacle employment are observed.</p> <p>4. Nuisance minefields are not normally fenced or marked. If ordered, perimeter fencing is erected:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. fence is erected in a clockwise manner starting on the friendly side, leaving a gap in the fence on the friendly side until mine-laying is complete b. existing fences are used where available c. fence is sited a minimum of 15 metres from the nearest mine d. fence consists of a minimum of a single strand or wire approximately waist high suspended on pickets about 15 metres apart e. fence is erected properly (pickets anchored, wire tied/windlassed, etc) f. fence is signed with mine signs located not more than 50 metres apart. <p>5. The section lays the nuisance minefield (using a random pattern):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. as a guideline, a section working by day and without interference maintains a laying rate of 15 buried antitank mines per hour or 30 surface laid antitank mines per hour. Deep buried mines require significantly 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>more time. Rates are 50% less at night or under NBC conditions.</p> <p>b. personnel laying mines are instructed fully on the aim of the minefield</p> <p>c. the position of each mine on the ground is clearly indicated before laying begins</p> <p>d. personnel laying mines work in pairs and each pair is detailed to lay specific mines</p> <p>e. orders to each pair clearly specify the route to be followed (normally in and out along the same route) and the order in which the mines are to be laid. In cases where doubt may arise as to the route, or when laying is being carried out during darkness, tape is laid before laying starts to mark safe routes. The tape is recovered by the laying party when finally leaving each site</p> <p>f. the work is organized such that there is a minimum of 20m between pairs of personnel laying mines</p> <p>g. if buried, holes for individual AT mines are dug deep and wide enough and the bottom is tamped so that the top of the mine is 50mm below ground level, 'bridging' of the hole by a tank/APC track is prevented, and that a firm base for the mine is provided</p> <p>h. appropriate measures are taken to ensure the proper actuation and laying of mines in special environments (eg. requirement for waterproofing or supports, depth/spacing of mines and direction of laying/arming when emplacing mines under water)</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>i. all mines, whether surface laid or buried, are camouflaged to greatest extent possible</p> <p>j. M18A1 Claymore defensive weapon systems (DWS) are set in the command detonated mode only</p> <p>k. if anti-disturbance devices are being employed, the final arming is done by one man, and the timing of this arming is rigidly controlled by the NCOIC.</p> <p>6. If required, a safe lane is properly fenced and marked for day / night operations.</p> <p>7. The section commander submits periodic task status reports and transmits a Minefield Completion Report (E122D MINLAYREP) immediately upon completion of the minefield.</p> <p>8. The element commander properly completes a minefield record (included within DND 2109) and submits it to higher HQ as soon as possible after minefield completion.</p>			

5015 B - EXECUTE A CRATER OBSTACLE**ELEMENT: PNR SECT****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The section is ordered to execute a crater obstacle. Siting of the obstacle has been coordinated with the supported manoeuvre commander and a reconnaissance report is available.

TASK STANDARD:

The section executes a crater obstacle within 25 percent of the time estimated in the reconnaissance report. The gap created is a minimum of 40 metres in depth (refer to note below) and rows of craters are angled 45 degree across the regular flow of traffic. The crater obstacle is nuisance mined and an accurate minefield record is completed. The crater is tied to existing or reinforced obstacles and blocks or disrupts an enemy main battle tank. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it under NBC conditions.

Note: Resource limitations may restrict training to the firing of only one row of three craters, in which case only the procedures employed will be evaluated and not the depth of the gap.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The section commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 'Battle Procedure':			
2. The section commander obtains technical information from the reconnaissance report (eg. DND 2103/E120B OBSRECCEREP).			
3. The section acquires and prepares all explosives, accessories and equipment needed for the demolition. It prepares charges in the rear area to minimize time on site (eg. chamber and priming charges).			
4. The section commander establishes / coordinates			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>task site security IAW BTS 3001, ‘Maintain Operations Security’:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. sweeping the site for enemy b. establishing local defensive positions on site c. rehearsing alarms d. carrying personal weapons and equipment during the task e. maintaining camouflage, noise/light discipline, and MOPP level. <p>5. The section commander marks the auger/camouflet/shaped charge holes IAW the reconnaissance report.</p> <p>6. The section craters using augers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. drills holes to required 2.4m depth b. priming charges are properly prepared with dual detonating cord leads c. loads explosives properly in the holes with each priming charge positioned at half the depth of the main cratering charge d. stems holes properly with auger cuttings e. connects firing circuit properly. <p>OR</p> <p>7. The section craters using camouflet procedures:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. chamber and priming charges are properly prepared with dual detonating cord leads, 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>ensuring that they are moulded to fit down the tube with little or no resistance</p> <p>b. drives camouflet tubes to the required depth (2.4m can be achieved when using the adapter and by digging down slightly before starting to drive the tube)</p> <p>c. withdraws tubes a minimum of 0.5m to prevent damage to the tubes during firing of the chambering charges, employing the correct procedure to withdraw tubes in the event that they become stuck</p> <p>d. confirms the depth of the hole using the tamping rod</p> <p>e. inserts prepared chamber charges down the tubes to the bottom of the holes, using a tamping rod to assist insertion as required but ensuring that excessive force or pressure is not used</p> <p>f. on order, connects firing circuit</p> <p>g. fires chamber charges on order of the section commander, observing safety distance</p> <p>h. once the 'all clear' has been given, compares the new depth of the holes with the mark from the previous measurement to determine the chamber size</p> <p>i. takes decision decides to use each chamber as is, or to fire another chamber charge</p> <p>j. takes appropriate safety precautions before loading chambers with explosives (waits 30 minutes for the chamber to cool or pours</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>approximately 10 litres of water down the hole and waits 10 minutes)</p> <p>k. loads explosives properly in the holes with each priming charge positioned at half the depth of the main cratering charge</p> <p>l. removes camouflet tubes completely, if they have not been previously fully removed, ensuring that detonating cord leads are not pulled or damaged during removal</p> <p>m. stems holes properly with available material</p> <p>n. on order, connects firing circuit.</p> <p>8. Section craters with shaped charges:</p> <p>a. on order, connects shaped charges to firing circuit and completes firing circuit</p> <p>b. fires shaped charges on order of the section commander, ensuring that safety distance is observed</p> <p>c. ensures holes are at the required depth (an auger or camouflet set may be required to clean or finish the hole)</p> <p>d. takes appropriate safety precautions before loading holes with explosives (waits 30 mins for the hole/metal slug to cool or pours approx 10l of water down the hole and waits 10 mins).</p> <p>9. The section fires the demolition on order of the section commander, ensuring that the required safety distance is observed.</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>10. The section performs proper misfire procedures, taking the required safety precautions.</p> <p>11. The section nuisance mines the craters.</p> <p>12. The section commander submits task status reports IAW unit SOPs (eg. E102A ENGTASKREP and, on completion, E120D OBSEXREP).</p> <p>13. The section commander completes the minefield record (included on the combined Minefield Completion Report, DND 2109/E122D MINLAYREP) accurately and submits it to higher headquarters.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

5016 B - CONSTRUCT AN ABATIS

ELEMENT: PNR SECT

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section is ordered to construct an abatis. Siting of the obstacle has been coordinated with the supported manoeuvre commander and a reconnaissance report is available. The site selected complies with the requirements for an effective abatis.

TASK STANDARD:

The section creates an abatis within 25 percent of the time estimated in the reconnaissance report. A light abatis is 20 to 30m deep and a heavy abatis is 50 to 100m deep. The obstacle is tied to existing or reinforced obstacles. There are 10 to 25 trees on each side of the road. A minimum of 75 percent of the trees are attached to their stumps. The abatis stops or delays an enemy main battle tank. If time permits and authorization given, the section will improve the abatis with mines, booby traps, and wire.

Note: Environmental regulations may preclude the tree felling necessary to construct an abatis. Training opportunities should be sought where land clearance is required as part of training area development or a purpose built facility should be employed using telephone poles or similar timber as targets. As a minimum, training will include a walk through of charge placement and other aspects of abatis construction.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The section commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 'Battle Procedure.'			
2. The section commander obtains technical information from the reconnaissance report (eg. DND 2103/E120B OBSRECCEREP).			
3. The section acquires and prepares all explosives, accessories and equipment, as required, to execute the			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>obstacle. If explosive means is to be used, the section prepares charges in the rear area to minimize time on the site.</p> <p>4. The section commander establishes / coordinates task site security IAW BTS 3001, ‘Maintain Operations Security’:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. sweeping the site for enemy b. establishing local defensive positions on site c. rehearsing alarms d. carrying personal weapons and equipment during the task e. maintaining camouflage, noise/light discipline, and MOPP level. <p>5. The section commander confirms DND 2103 and marks trees to be cut. Note: Selects trees with a minimum of 60cm in diameter and 6m high to oppose tracked vehicles, and selects trees spaced 3 to 4m apart to provide sufficient obstacle density.</p> <p>6. The section constructs an abatis using pioneer tools:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. cuts trees on one side of the trail or road: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) fells trees at a 45 degree angle to the road, with the tops toward the enemy (2) cuts the trees 1.5m above the ground (3) does not cut the trees completely through the trunk. Allows the trunk to remain attached to the stump to impede the enemy in clearing the 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p style="text-align: center;">obstacle</p> <p>b. using the same procedures, cuts trees on the opposite side of the road and fells them on top of the previously cut trees.</p> <p>7. The section constructs an abatis using explosives:</p> <p>a. if possible, prepares a test shot on a tree:</p> <p>(1) prepares charge based on the charge calculations in the reconnaissance report</p> <p>(2) for cutting charges:</p> <p>(a) removes the bark prior to placing the charge</p> <p>(b) places the charge 1.5m above the ground on the side of the direction of fall</p> <p>(c) primes the charge in the centre of the outside face of the explosives</p> <p>(d) firmly attaches the charge with tape, wire, or twine</p> <p>b. for borehole charges (for timber with circumference greater than 2.35m):</p> <p>(1) 1.5m above the ground, drills one hole (for targets up to 50cm diameter), or two holes (for targets greater than 50cm diameter) bored at right angles to each other 5cm apart vertically. Borehole depth is two thirds of the target thickness</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>(2) places charge(s) in the hole(s), and stems remainder of the hole(s) with damp earth</p> <p>c. if required, (eg. tree is leaning the wrong way or is affected by a strong wind), places a ‘kicker’ charge of approximately 0.5 kg (1 block C4) two-thirds of the way up the tree on the opposite side of the main charge, and initiated simultaneously with the cutting / borehole charges</p> <p>d. fires a test shot and adjusts the charges as necessary</p> <p>e. places charges on all trees to be felled IAW para 7a</p> <p>f. lays out / connects firing circuit properly.</p> <p>8. If using explosives, the section fires the demolition on order of the section commander, ensuring that the required safety distance is observed.</p> <p>9. The section performs proper misfire procedures, taking the required safety precautions.</p> <p>10. The section improves the abatis if time permits:</p> <p>a. lays mines and booby traps (if authority is given) within the abatis</p> <p>b. lays wire throughout the abatis</p> <p>c. use wire rope to join trees together beginning on the enemy side.</p> <p>11. The section commander submits task status reports IAW unit SOPs (eg. E102A ENGTASKREP and, on completion, E120D OBSEXREP).</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
12. The section commander completes the minefield record (included on the combined Minefield Completion Report, DND 2109/E122D MINLAYREP) accurately and submits it to higher HQ.			

5017 B - FIRE A PREPARED DEMOLITION**ELEMENT: PNR SECT****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The section is ordered to take over a preliminary demolition target. The target has been prepared to State 1 (SAFE) by a field engineer section, which must move to prepare another target/obstacle. The initiation set has been prepared and the mines necessary to nuisance mine the fired demolition have been placed in cache location close to the obstacle. Enemy contact is not expected for 15 minutes following rearward passage of the last friendly vehicle. Some iterations of training on this task are performed in MOPP 3 Mask.

TASK STANDARD:

The section prepares the demolition to State 2 (ARMED), fires the demolition on withdrawal of remaining friendly elements, and mines the obstacle within 15 minutes. The time required to complete this task is increased when conducted under NBC conditions.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. Section commander ensures receipt of a proper hand over of the obstacle from the engineer section which prepared the target to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. general information including the target number, type of target, grid reference b. charge locations c. firing circuit layout d. firing point location and location of the initiation set e. work still required to prepare the demolition target 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>f. cache location for mines required to nuisance mine the target after firing</p> <p>g. misfire procedures</p> <p>h. hand over of the DND 913 Demolition Order (for a preliminary demolition with any restrictions placed on its execution)</p> <p>i. hand over of the minefield record (included within DND 2109 Minefield Completion Report) started by the engineer section.</p> <p>2. Upon withdrawal of friendly elements, the section fires the demolition:</p> <p>a. if any restrictions have been placed on its firing, the section commander seeks authority to fire from the Authorized Commander IAW the DND 913</p> <p>b. connects all components of the firing circuit and fires the demolition.</p> <p>3. Section nuisance mines the target (eg. crater or abatis).</p> <p>4. Section reports the results of the demolition using E120D OBSEXREP.</p> <p>5. Section commander completes the minefield record (DND 2109) and submits it to higher headquarters.</p>			

5018 B - SET BOOBY TRAPS**ELEMENT: PNR SECT****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The section is tasked to set booby traps in a given area or facility. Orders include commander's intent for booby trapping, the location of area or facility to be booby trapped, any restrictions, marking requirements and time by which the task is to be completed. No reconnaissance or detailed planning has been previously conducted for this task. Booby traps may be set in conjunction with other obstacles and may be either improvised or actuated using the standard firing device. No iterations of training on this are performed under NBC conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The section set booby traps IAW the commander's intent within the time allotted. Booby traps are properly constructed and recorded.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The section commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 'Battle Procedure.' 2. The section commander plans and conducts reconnaissance IAW BTS 3011 , 'Conduct Engineer / Pioneer Reconnaissance': <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. determines time, labour and materials available and determines the exact position and design for each booby trap that is to be set b. design meets the international protocol / restrictions on the employment of booby traps c. if required, prepares and submits a reconnaissance report (DND 2103 Obstacle 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>Recce Report / E120B OBSRECCEREP, if available).</p> <p>d. requests and acquires explosives, accessories and other construction materials necessary to set the booby traps, if not already allocated in orders.</p> <p>3. The section sets booby traps:</p> <p>a. inspects all firing devices to ensure that they have all of the required parts and they function properly</p> <p>b. the commander establishes a control point, ensuring that one NCO remains at the control point in charge of all of the explosives and firing devices that are to be used</p> <p>c. the commander details and marks safe routes to each booby trap, unless the track plan is obvious to all users</p> <p>d. the laying parties are kept as small as possible, with each booby trap being laid by one person or two people at the most</p> <p>e. parties are dispersed to avoid interference with one another or unnecessary casualties in the event of an explosion</p> <p>f. the commander explains to each person exactly what is to be done at each booby trap</p> <p>g. the parties properly place and conceal the charge, report to the commander when the task is completed and guard the trap until</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>ordered otherwise</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> h. the commander inspects each booby trap to ensure that it is properly laid and concealed i. the commander orders all personnel to return to the control point via the marked route, ensuring that any equipment or spare stores are removed j. the commander ensures that all personnel are out of danger before arming any booby traps k. the commander or 2IC arms all traps, using a logical sequence of arming l. upon withdrawal from the area, the armer removes any safe path markings. <p>4. If so ordered, the section marks all booby traps set in friendly territory IAW the method of marking and fencing specified in orders.</p> <p>5. The section commander submits task status reports IAW unit SOPs (eg. E102A ENGTASKREP, if available) and reports completion of the booby traps (E120D OBSEXREP, if available) immediately to higher HQ.</p> <p>6. The section commander completes a booby trap record(s) (eg. DND 2109 / E122D MINLAYREP, if available) and submits it to the HQ authorizing the booby traps as soon as possible after setting the booby trap.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

5019 B - CLEAR BOOBY TRAPS

ELEMENT: PNR SECT

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section is ordered to clear a two to three storey building and immediate surroundings of booby traps. Orders include the degree of damage and risk that will be accepted, whether booby traps are to be disposed of or only marked and reported, and the time by which the clearance must be completed. The area is secure. No iterations of training on this task are performed under NBC conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The section searches and clears the building and surrounding area IAW established procedures and within the time allotted. No casualties are suffered as a result of using improper clearance drills.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The section commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 'Battle Procedure.' 2. The section commander plans and prepares for the clearance: a. if available, acquires floor plans and any other information concerning the building to determine number of parties required and develop a clearance plan b. ensures the required stores and equipment is acquired and prepared for the clearance. 3. The section commander, making use of any information acquired during planning and preparation, conducts a visual reconnaissance of the building and surrounding area to decide on a suitable location for a control point, a place of entry into the building, etc.			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>4. The section commander establishes and coordinates the search/clearance of the control point.</p> <p>5. The section searches and clears the area surrounding the building:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the section commander assigns searching responsibilities by area b. searchers search the area outside of the building for trip wires, command wires, booby traps and mines using proper searching techniques and taking appropriate safety precautions c. section disposes of booby traps IAW methods appropriate to the booby trap(s) and using proper techniques associated with each disposal method employed d. section marks areas following clearance: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) marks the cleared area (2) marks the boundaries of any area still containing (or suspected of containing) mines or booby traps. <p>6. Prior to commencing the search of the building, the section turns off electricity and gas services, if possible and time permits.</p> <p>7. The section commander assigns a pair of searchers to gain entry to the building:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. effects an entry into the building, taking the necessary precautions concerning entry via doorsteps, doors and windows and, if required, gains entry via a wall or the roof 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>b. withdraws to control point once an entry is effected.</p> <p>8. The section commander and assistant enter the building, establish an interior control point, and conduct an interior reconnaissance:</p> <p>a. clears path to the control point of booby traps</p> <p>b. marks route from point of entry to control point</p> <p>c. confirms or formulates search plan at the control point:</p> <p>(1) determines how rooms can be safely entered</p> <p>(2) decides which rooms will be searched first</p> <p>(3) determines final search party organization, incorporating precautions such as maximum of two personnel per room, one floor at a time, half the rooms on that floor, and dispersal between parties searching different rooms</p> <p>d. returns to the exterior control point, leads the clearance party inside the building to the interior control point, and assigns personnel to search rooms.</p> <p>e. leaves someone or a sign at the exterior control point to prevent others from entering the building until it is cleared and to monitor the search/clearance operation</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p style="text-align: center;">by radio.</p> <p>9. Searchers search their respective rooms in the correct order:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. floors and furniture b. walls, including doors, windows, fireplaces, built in-cupboards, etc c. fixtures including light switches and pictures. d. other moveable items. <p>10. Searchers observe safety precautions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. clears all sides of doors before opening / closing them b. opens doors, windows, drawers, cupboards, etc, moves furniture and performs other hazardous tasks remotely using pulling cables c. when entering through a window, uses a plank to reach the floor on the other side well away from the window d. once cleared, leaves doors (wedged open), drawers, cupboards, etc open and marks them 'CLEAR' with date of clearance e. marks routes through the building f. uses a remote flash in all dark areas prior to entering g. marks everything proven safe as such 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>h. implements a rest plan</p> <p>i. stops searching if distracted.</p> <p>11. Searchers mark doors to rooms to indicate whether or not booby traps were found and then report to the section commander.</p> <p>12. The section commander details next room or floor to be searched and, if necessary, establishes a new interior control point.</p> <p>13. Searchers return to interior control point upon completion of the search and exit under control of the section commander.</p> <p>14. The section commander decides how any booby traps found will be disposed of (eg. pulling, destroying in situ, disrupting, or neutralizing/disarming), or if they are only to be marked and reported.</p> <p>15. If booby traps are to be disposed of, clearance personnel dispose of booby traps:</p> <p>a. minimum personnel are employed</p> <p>b. method of disposal is appropriate to the type of booby trap</p> <p>c. proper technique / procedure is used to dispose of the booby traps</p> <p>d. safety precautions are observed (eg. employment of minimum personnel in clearance, observation of safety distances, waiting periods following pulling, etc)</p> <p>e. if required / applicable, protective measures are employed.</p> <p>16. Following completion of search (and clearance if</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>applicable), the section commander marks the building with a permanent sign including date, time, unit/personal identifier, 'NO TRAPS', 'TRAPS CLEARED' or, if booby traps have been left in the building, marks it with booby trap signs.</p> <p>17. The section commander submits task status reports to higher headquarters IAW unit SOPs (eg. E102A ENGTASKREP).</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

5020 B/C - PREPARE A SITE FOR FIBUA

ELEMENT: PNR SECT / PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section / platoon is in support of a force establishing the defence in a built-up area (BUA). The element receives orders to conduct FIBUA operations as part of the commander's intent. Orders include location and buildings to be occupied, level of protection to be provided and time task to be completed. Site security to be provided by all elements. The time required is increased when conducting this task under NBC conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The section / platoon prepares the site for FIBUA operations to provide the intended protection and the stages of building preparation desired by the force commander within the allotted time. The site must provide both an efficient weapons platform and protection from enemy fire. Preparatory work must not compromise the intended use of the site.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The section / platoon commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 , 'Battle Procedure.'			
2. The section / platoon commander conducts a reconnaissance to confirm buildings and contents to conduct the operation IAW orders.			
3. The section / platoon commander briefs subordinates on the level of the operation as either stage 1,2, or 3.			
4. The section / platoon commander supervises the advice and assistance provided by his section / platoon during the operation.			
5. The section / platoon constructs a FIBUA OP. The			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>following should be noted when selecting buildings for suitable CSWS fire positions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the building must be of sturdy masonry or solid construction b. the ceiling must be a minimum of 2.2m high c. the floor of the room must be a minimum of 5.4m x 7.5m d. there must be at least 2.5 m² of room openings (an open door standard size is adequate). <p>6. Building preparation:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. <u>Stage 1.</u> The selection of buildings and alternate buildings. Fire positions and OPs in place, and cellars prepared usually due to strongest point of protection. Defenders able to survive and carry out essential administration and fight up to 8 hours b. <u>Stage 2.</u> Buildings prepared to withstand bombardment and infantry attack. Fortified firing positions and mouseholes to permit freedom of movement. Defenders able to survive and carry out essential administration and fight up to 24 hours c. <u>Stage 3.</u> Alternate buildings prepared to stages 1 & 2 with connecting routes. Obstacles, wiring and booby trapping completed, and must be sited to achieve surprise. The defenders are able to survive and carry out essential administration, and fight up to 24 hours 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards		Eff	NPrac	Ineff
d.	Note: There can be no fixed design for construction of firing platforms. Each platform must suit the particular weapon system, and normally is improvised from local materials. Platforms built entirely of sandbags are very heavy and should not be constructed if there is doubt about the strength of the supporting floor.			
7.	Engineers advise and may assist with the following:			
a.	blocking all unused doors, windows and chimneys with sandbags and mattresses			
b.	wire dangerous approaches inside and out			
c.	remove flammable materials			
d.	remove stairs or block with wire and / or boards			
e.	make large holes to allow men to move between floors using ropes or ladders			
f.	convert basements or dig shelters with overhead protection			
g.	provide a tunnel or trench exit from a mouse-hole on the ground floor			
h.	knock glass out of all windows to be used as firing positions, and nail a grenade screen over the frame			
i.	erect barricades of sandbags in rooms 1m back from windows, fix barbed wire between window sills and base of sandbags			
j.	support ceilings with timber and sandbags			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>so that the floor above can be sandbagged</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> k. make small holes in upper floors to enable grenades to be drooped through l. construct mouseholes as necessary m. fortify exteriors of buildings not to be occupied, as a deception measure, if time permits. <p>8. The section / platoon commander submits task status reports to higher HQ IAW unit SOPs.</p> <p>9. <u>Hardening buildings</u>: If suitable buildings cannot be identified, then hardening facilities to improve their protective characteristics may be necessary. The following points should be considered when planning the strengthening of a building to resist weapons effects:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. shored-up ceilings to strengthen cellars or rooms. The reinforcement of a room must not block the exits, of which there should be more than one b. the more stories there are above that which is occupied, the more likely is it that the effects of conventional shell fire or bombing will not penetrate to the room concerned c. demolishing a building on top of a framework in the occupied room may provide excellent protection, but care must be taken not to draw the attention of the enemy by doing so d. interior traverses, sandbag walls, or furniture filled with rubble gives added protection against lighter weapons. 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>Mattresses can provide some protection against shrapnel</p> <p>e. it is rarely feasible to provide fire fighting equipment throughout a building. It is better to develop an alternative position in another building that can be occupied if the first building catches fire</p> <p>f. protective obstacles are just as necessary around buildings as in the open; they must be sited to achieve surprise.</p> <p>g. Note: Before work is carried out to strengthen a building, technical advice or assistance should be obtained to ensure that:</p> <p>(1) braces used to post up ceilings are strong enough and are suitable located and secured;</p> <p>(2) floors are not overloaded</p> <p>(3) care must be taken to avoid removing load bearing walls.</p>			

5021 B/C - CONSTRUCT A SHELTER**ELEMENT: PNR SECT / PL****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The platoon receives orders to construct a timber frame or squared wood shelter (bunker or OP). Orders include the anticipated threat, the unit to be supported, the general location of the shelter, and the time by which construction is to be completed. The shelter may be underground or above ground, as applicable to the tactical situation, etc. The required heavy equipment and construction materials (eg. timber, squared wood, CGI, back hoe, etc) are available. No iterations of training on this task are performed under NBC conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon constructs the shelter at the required location within the time allotted in orders. No damage to the shelter structure or personnel injuries are incurred as a result of improper shelter design or construction.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The platoon commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure.' 2. The reconnaissance party conducts a reconnaissance IAW BTS 3011, 'Conduct Engineer / Pioneer Reconnaissance.' The supported commander is advised on the most appropriate structure (underground, above ground, or natural shelters such as caves, mines, tunnels, existing buildings) based on the anticipated threat, terrain, and resources available (eg. labour, equipment, material and time). 3. The shelter design is completed, ensuring that the following criteria are observed: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. shelter is sited using available cover and 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>concealment to the greatest extent possible, and is not sited along natural drainage courses</p> <p>b. adequate internal space is provided for the number of personnel to occupy the shelter and the functions to be performed within (eg. space for litters in a unit medical station)</p> <p>c. required overhead protection (OHP) is determined based on anticipated threat</p> <p>d. columns / uprights and roof joists / bearers are properly sized based on the span (eg. width) of the shelter, the dead load weight of the OHP and any anticipated live loads</p> <p>e. subject to the NBC threat, ventilation openings are provided</p> <p>f. entrance and exit passageways have a minimum clear width of 1.5 metres following the settling / swelling of wall structures after construction</p> <p>g. emergency exits are provided for large shelters in case the main doorways are blocked</p> <p>h. for above ground shelters, blast walls are designed to:</p> <p>(1) protect shelter walls</p> <p>(2) protect the front of open doorways while allowing two ways of approaching each doorway (eg. from each side)</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>i. grenade sumps / missile traps, if required, are incorporated</p> <p>j. blackout curtains are provided at all openings</p> <p>k. drainage structures, if required, are incorporated.</p> <p>4. A bill of material is prepared and submitted, and receipt of the required material is confirmed.</p> <p>5. The platoon constructs the shelter IAW the design ensuring that the following construction details are observed:</p> <p>a. for underground shelters, the excavation is sufficiently large to permit unimpeded construction of the shelter in situ, with due consideration for the safe angle of repose of the soil</p> <p>b. proper connections are made between structural members (eg. columns, capsills, groundsills, roof joists, spreaders) and between sheeting / sheathing material (eg. both wall and roofing material) and structural members</p> <p>c. underground walls are properly secured in place along groundsills using pickets</p> <p>d. underground trestle type side and end walls are properly secured in place using pickets</p> <p>e. underground shelter walls are properly backfilled using sandbags:</p> <p>(1) sandbags are turned inside out so</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>that the seams are on the inside</p> <p>(2) sandbags are doubled if filling with loose sand</p> <p>(3) sandbags are laid in horizontal layers or “courses” with the first course consisting of sandbags laid head on (“headers”) and the second course laid lengthways (“stretchers”). Subsequent layers are composed alternately of headers and stretchers</p> <p>(4) wall is correctly bonded by staggering vertical joints between sandbags in different courses</p> <p>(5) sandbag necks and seams are not exposed in the outer face of the wall</p> <p>(6) corners of each sandbag are tucked in as it is laid</p> <p>(7) each sandbag is shaped and compacted</p> <p>(8) wall corners are properly constructed using $\frac{3}{4}$ full sandbags, as required</p> <p>(9) the face of a sandbag revetment has a slope of 4:1, and the base, which must be on firm ground, is dug at a slope of 1:4 to ensure that sandbags are at right angles to the slope being revetted</p> <p>(10) a free standing sandbag wall higher than 1.5 m is constructed with the intervening space between the two</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>sides of the wall filled with earth</p> <p>(11) sandbags in a sandbag retaining wall need only be laid one row deep, however, courses of sandbags are correctly bonded, using alternate courses of headers and stretchers, with intervening spaces filled with compacted soil</p> <p>(12) sandbags in a sandbag pedestal are laid a minimum of two rows deep in each course and should not be laid more than three courses high without additional reinforcement</p> <p>f. roof is properly waterproofed (eg. a layer of heavy duty waterproofing material is laid over the roof sheeting before backfilling with OHP material and another layer is laid on top of the OHP and secured in place)</p> <p>g. OHP is properly compacted in place</p> <p>h. access trenches are properly revetted and sloped to prevent water from entering the shelter</p> <p>i. the shelter, its approaches and supporting structures / equipment (eg. generators, local defences) are properly camouflaged and concealed from ground and air view / sensors</p> <p>j. blast walls are properly constructed.</p> <p>6. The platoon commander submits periodic task status reports IAW SOPs.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

5201 B - PROVIDES EXPLOSIVE ASSISTANCE TO DIGGING

ELEMENT: PNR SECT

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section receives orders to assist in the digging of vehicle and / or personnel protective positions in very hard/frozen ground using explosives. Orders include where the positions are to be constructed and the time by which the excavation is to be completed. The required explosives and accessories are available.

TASK STANDARD:

The sections reconnoitres positions, determines charge requirements, and excavates, prepares, and fires charges. No casualties are suffered as a result of using improper demolition procedures.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. Party commander accurately calculates charge depth and explosive quantity requirements based on: a. the size and number of positions required b. charge spacing between 1 and 1.5 times the charge depth, depending upon the soil characteristics. A test shot should be fired. 2. Party digs outer channel to assist in producing a clean excavation face. 3. Party marks out hole locations IAW required spacing. 4. Party excavates holes to required depth not to exceed 1.2m using appropriate equipment (eg. ‘dibbers’). 5. Party commander calculates sufficient length of double detonating cord leads that are required to connect			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>the charges to the trunk line.</p> <p>6. Party prepares charges:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. ensures good contact exists between the explosive and detonating cord b. ensures charges fit easily into holes excavated at para 4 c. charges are primed with double detonating cord leads to ensure initiation of the charges. <p>7. Party loads charges, ensuring that holes are properly stemmed with earth and tamped.</p> <p>8. Party properly lays out the trunk line or ring main, as applicable, and connects it to the detonating cord leads from the charges.</p> <p>9. Party commander ensures initiation set is properly prepared and connected to the trunk line/ring main.</p> <p>10. Party commander fires the charges, ensuring required safety precautions are observed prior to and during firing.</p> <p>11. For excavation depths greater than 1.5m, the party excavates the loose material and repeats para 3 through 10.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

SUSTAINMENT

6001 D - COORDINATE INTEGRAL COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT

ELEMENT: ADMIN COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The Administration Company is conducting its primary support mission. Provision of CSS must be coordinated at unit level. Unit administration and the provision of integral CSS should be specifically detailed in SOPs. Enemy contact is a possibility.

TASK STANDARD:

Mission accomplishment is not hindered by a lack of CSS planning. All elements receive the necessary combat supplies, equipment, and personnel to carry out their assigned mission. Integral CSS is effectively executed IAW SOPs.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The company command post plans CSS: a. forecasts anticipated requirements b. establishes resupply priorities based on the tactical situation and SOPs c. coordinates and consolidates unit administrative reports and returns d. provides advice to the unit commander on CSS matters and plans e. coordinates unit replenishment with brigade G4 staff and CS service battalion f. coordinates emergency and supplementary			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>CSS requirements as per SOP.</p> <p>2. The company operates a command post to effectively plan, coordinate and supervise the provision of integral:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. personnel administration IAW BTS 6002, ‘Conduct Personnel Administration’ b. transportation services IAW BTS 6005, ‘Provide Integral Transportation Services’ c. maintenance services IAW BTS 6007, ‘Provide Integral Maintenance Services’ d. supply services IAW BTS 6009, ‘Provide Integral Supply Services’ e. food services IAW BTS 6010, ‘Provide Food Services.’ 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

6002 B - CONDUCT PERSONNEL ADMINISTRATION

ELEMENT: PERS SECT

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The personnel services section, under the direction of the Adjutant (when not employed forward), is conducting its mission. Replacement personnel are arriving daily. The section has all assigned personnel and equipment, and all required forms, manuals, and SOPs.

TASK STANDARD:

The section integrates replacements and prepares and submits personnel reports and actions while sustaining operations and providing for the discipline, welfare and morale of unit personnel.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The section receives replacements: a. welcomes and acclimatizes them to the unit b. assigns them to subunits IAW the Commanding Officer's priorities c. briefs on the unit's mission and the current tactical situation before being sent forward. 2. The Chief Clerk and Orderly Room personnel perform administrative functions: a. maintain and update personnel records: (1) Personnel Record Resumes (2) pay (3) employment			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>(4) leave</p> <p>(5) Personal Emergency Notification information</p> <p>b. amendments are made to unit records, as applicable</p> <p>c. submit requests for formal amendments to higher HQ for action.</p> <p>3. Unit resource management support personnel provide detailed pay accounting and other financial services:</p> <p>a. provides secure storage for cash and scrip/cash vouchers</p> <p>b. distribute pay to personnel</p> <p>c. maintains pay documents</p> <p>d. properly process pay allotments.</p> <p>4. The Orderly Room personnel provide postal services:</p> <p>a. receive and distribute the unit's incoming mail</p> <p>b. consolidate and dispatch the unit's outgoing mail</p> <p>c. implement the postal procedures and issues by higher formation HQ, including censorship of outgoing mail</p> <p>d. provides limited financial postal services.</p> <p>5. Chaplain detachments provide the following</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. provide moral / spiritual advice on matters affecting the spiritual welfare of the troops b. provide counseling services and spiritual comfort, particularly to the wounded c. conduct religious services (eg. Church parades, burials) d. perform battlefield casualty identification. <p>6. The section processes / coordinates, in a timely manner, documentation associated with:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. service investigations b. discipline c. redresses of grievance d. harassment cases e. provision of legal services f. personnel assessments g. career progression h. honours and awards. <p>7. The section coordinates unit personnel participation in / access to personnel support programs including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. leave, rest and recreational centres b. entertainment (eg. reading material, films / videos, radio programs, and live shows) 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> c. messes and institutes d. specialist welfare services e. specialist social work services. <p>8. The section coordinates casualty reporting and documentation:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the section processes documentation associated with the reporting of dead, missing, wounded, injured and ill personnel (eg. CF98 Report of Injuries or Immediate Death) b. the personnel records of dead / missing / evacuated personnel are backloaded with personal effects c. the Adjutant ensures that subunit commanders write letters to next-of-kin when unit casualties are suffered. <p>9. If so tasked by the Commanding Officer, the section coordinates the unit public information program.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

6003 B/C/D - TREAT AND EVACUATE CASUALTIES

ELEMENT: SECT / PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

An element has sustained casualties requiring treatment and evacuation. The unit's medical assistants (MAs) are available to provide emergency medical treatment and evacuation.

TASK STANDARD:

All casualties are treated and evacuated without causing additional injury. The element provides its own security. Enemy casualties are treated IAW Geneva Conventions.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. Personnel provide emergency first aid. 2. The element sends a casualty report / request for treatment to higher HQ, including: a. number of casualties b. location of casualties c. status of casualties d. enemy situation. 3. The element examines casualties: a. conduct quick visual exam b. determine which patients are most seriously ill or injured c. move casualties to secure location.			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>4. The element treats casualties:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. determine the general conditions, types of injuries, and need for immediate life-saving measures b. provide emergency medical treatment to stabilize seriously wounded for transportation to the casualty collection point (CCP) c. provide first aid for minor injuries or illness d. initiate casualty tags. <p>5. The element reacts to a casualty situation:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. the CCP is established b. all casualties are prioritized and evacuated to the CCP c. the element's CSM coordinates the evacuation using ambulances and unit vehicles d. MAs, with support from other available personnel, stabilize casualties IAW basic techniques for life-saving (BTLS) e. the element HQ coordinates evacuation. <p>6. Casualties requiring further treatment are transported to the unit medical station:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. patients are moved as quickly as possible by any available means using covered / concealed routes b. provide supporting treatment en route. 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>7. MAs submits a request for aeromedevac and a landing site is prepared:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. best available cover and concealed landing site is identified b. landing site security is provided c. number and type of casualties, and patient conditions are reported d. casualties are moved to the landing site, and treatment is continued. <p>8. Evacuation of remains and effects of those killed-in-action (KIA) is supervised and completed as quickly as possible:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. casualty report is submitted to higher HQ b. custody is taken of military equipment in possession of KIA c. remains and personal effects are evacuated IAW unit SOPs d. nominal roll and strength states are updated. 			

6004 D - HANDLE PRISONERS OF WAR (PW) / DETAINEES**ELEMENT: PL / COY****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The platoon / company has been conducting tactical operations and has captured enemy PWs and / or taken civilians into custody.

TASK STANDARD:

PWs/detainees are processed and guarded so that they are not allowed to disrupt or halt the mission. They are handled IAW international law, and evacuated from danger as soon as possible.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. PWs / detainees are searched: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. all weapons and documents (other than personal identity documents) are removed b. the following articles are left in the PWs / detainees' possession: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) helmets, respirators, and other such articles if required for personal protection (2) personal effects including items used for clothing and feeding (3) identity documents (4) badges of rank, nationality and decorations c. money and other items of value are only taken by order of an officer and upon issuance of a receipt 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. PWs / detainees, and items removed from them, are tagged with date, time, location, circumstances of capture and capturing unit, if possible e. any information of immediate tactical importance is reported to higher HQ f. no physical or mental coercion is used to secure information. <p>2. PWs / detainees are segregated at the company collection point:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. senior officers, junior officers, NCMs, civilians and politicians are segregated b. groups remain segregated during movement to the rear c. all are restricted from areas where they could obtain information on the mission, strength or future operations. <p>3. Silence is enforced:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. PW / detainee commanders are prevented from giving orders b. escape planning is prevented c. cautioning each other on security is prevented d. anything PWs/detainees say to each other is reported e. company members do not talk in front of PWs / detainees except to issue orders or 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p style="text-align: center;">enforce discipline.</p> <p>4. The capture is reported to higher HQ.</p> <p>5. Sections / platoons speed PWs / detainees to the rear:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. a company PW collection point is designated b. segregation is maintained c. transportation, food, water and emergency clothing is coordinated with higher HQ d. PWs / detainees too seriously wounded to be evacuated by normal means are turned over to medical personnel for evacuation and treatment, with guards being provided as necessary. <p>6. The company safeguards PWs / detainees:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. removes PWs / detainees from the dangers of the battlefield b. ensures PWs / detainees arrive safely at the collection point c. prevents any escapes d. prevents any abuse of PWs / detainees e. treats PWs / detainees humanely f. releases PWs / detainees unharmed if they cannot be held for any reason, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) speed of movement 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
(2) shortage of guard personnel			
(3) shortage of supplies (food, water)			
(4) certainty of being freed by own forces.			

6005 C - PROVIDE INTEGRAL TRANSPORTATION SERVICES

ELEMENT: LOG PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon is conducting its primary support mission. Transportation and supply activities must be closely coordinated at the administration company command post.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon successfully carries out unit replenishment, assigned general transport tasks, and maintenance of transport records.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon carries part of the unit basic load IAW unit SOPs. 2. The platoon carries out integral administrative transport tasks: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. provides drivers, when required b. plans and conducts unit integral troop lifts c. conducts refueling as required d. transports the unit quick reaction force, if applicable e. conducts removal and disposal of garbage f. transports general cargo g. picks up salvage h. provides staging support for unit moves 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>i. drafts administrative move orders.</p> <p>3. The platoon controls the administration for all unit vehicles:</p> <p>a. dispatching</p> <p>b. vehicle records</p> <p>c. maintenance scheduling</p> <p>d. replacement vehicles.</p> <p>4. The platoon performs the MSE safety function for the unit.</p> <p>a. driver training</p> <p>b. driver testing</p> <p>c. maintains drivers records and licenses</p> <p>d. accident investigation and reporting.</p> <p>5. The platoon conducts delivery point (DP) operations as detailed IAW BTS 6006, ‘Conduct Delivery Point Operations.</p>			

6006 D - CONDUCT DELIVERY POINT (DP) OPERATIONS**ELEMENT: ADMIN COY****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The battalion/battle group is preparing for, or is involved in combat. Brigade and / or division combat service support (CSS) assets are available. It has been directed that provision of routine resupply will be effected through delivery points. Enemy action is possible or expected. Iterations of this task may be performed under radio silence.

TASK STANDARD:

Resupply is successfully conducted without loss of critical supplies or vehicles. DP opening and closing times are met (maximum 30 mins duration).

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. DP planning: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. a primary site is selected and reconnoitred. The site meets the following requirements: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) is accessible to main routes (2) provides firm standing (3) provides adequate space to prevent traffic congestion (4) permits dispersion (5) allows tailgate to tailgate loading (6) is defensible (7) has traffic circuit which is easily discernible at night and provides adequate in and out routes 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>(8) has waiting areas near contact points, which provide camouflage and space for both empty and loaded vehicles</p> <p>b. an RV for a crash DP in case of attack is selected and reconnoitred</p> <p>c. a suitable alternate site within a reasonable distance of the primary site is identified and reconnoitred</p> <p>d. a DP request is forwarded to the CS service battalion or allied support agency with the following info:</p> <p>(1) primary DP location</p> <p>(2) contact point for primary DP location</p> <p>(3) alternative DP location</p> <p>(4) contact point for alternative DP location</p> <p>(5) desired time of opening</p> <p>(6) suitability of primary and alternate DP for aerial delivery.</p> <p>2. DP drill. Prior to the DP opening:</p> <p>a. the DP site is swept to ensure that it is clear of enemy</p> <p>b. listening posts and security are established</p> <p>c. unit vehicles are parked and concealed in designated waiting areas</p> <p>d. routes and waiting areas are signed and the</p>			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>location of each commodity is marked</p> <p>e. the reporting centre is established and the contact point(s) are manned</p> <p>f. communications are established, if EMCON measures permit</p> <p>g. the RV for the crash DP is known by all.</p> <p>3. DP procedure. After security is established and service battalion vehicles arrive, the following procedures are followed:</p> <p>a. replenishing vehicles are met at the contact point by a unit representative and directed to the actual DP location</p> <p>b. DP vehicles are directed to unit vehicles</p> <p>c. loads are transferred using:</p> <p>(1) tailgate-to-tailgate (cargo) loading</p> <p>(2) side-to-side loading, eg. pod trucks</p> <p>(3) exchange of vehicles</p> <p>d. the demand for the next day's DP is submitted</p> <p>e. personnel replacements are brought forward</p> <p>f. replenishing vehicles depart the DP</p> <p>g. unit vehicles move to the waiting area, form up in packets and move back to the unit location</p> <p>h. the DP site is cleared and all signs are removed.</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

6007 C - PROVIDE INTEGRAL MAINTENANCE SERVICES

ELEMENT: MAINT PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon is conducting its mission, centralized in the platoon, or decentralized with mobile repair teams (MRT) dedicated to specific subunits in operations.

TASK STANDARD:

Effective maintenance services are given to the supported unit for all land technical equipment. Technical control is retained by the unit Maintenance Officer. Integral repair is performed IAW the Permissive Repair Schedule (PRS).

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. Repair services are provided: <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. conduct repair tasks IAW CSS BTSsb. conduct preventive maintenance inspections IAW SOPsc. conduct repairs IAW unit prioritiesd. VOR rate is maintained at the directed level.			
2. Recovery services are provided: <ul style="list-style-type: none">a. conduct recovery tasks IAW BTS 6008, 'Respond to a Repair / Recovery Request'b. conduct backloading to Equipment Collection Pointc. conduct route clearance tasks			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>d. conduct unit trail party tasks:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) report unit clear of Start Point, Release Point, and other critical points IAW movement orders / SOPs (2) repair vehicles within time limit IAW movement order / SOPs (3) recover forward IAW movement order / SOPs (4) prepare vehicle for recovery by Brigade trail party including picking up co-driver, vehicle trailer, and mission critical equipment, if required <p>e. Trail party is organized to include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) OIC Trail (2) repair / recovery vehicles (3) vehicle to carry casualty vehicle's passenger(s) / cargo / trailer (4) ambulance. 			
<p>3. Other maintenance tasks are provided:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. deny equipment to enemy IAW BTS 5008, 'Deny Equipment and Supplies' b. conduct modifications IAW CFTOs c. provide technical inspection and classification services IAW SOPs. 			
<p>4. Workshop support is provided:</p>			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
a. operate maintenance management information systems IAW CFTO/ LMS policies			
b. maintain effective production control including repair / recovery requests to supporting CS Maintenance Company			
c. plan unit maintenance workload: (1) advise commander on unit maintenance program (2) manage and allocate resources effectively (3) ensure training and equipment requirements are identified / achieved			
d. maintain technical library			
e. provide effective repair parts support including proper scaling, stocking, and accounting procedures			
f. provide effective tool crib support.			

6008 B - RESPOND TO A REPAIR / RECOVERY REQUEST**ELEMENT: MRT DET****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The mobile repair team (MRT) receives a repair / recovery task, complete with Repair / Recovery request number. Enemy action is a possibility. An NBC environment may exist.

TASK STANDARD:

The MRT successfully repairs / recovers the casualty IAW the Permissive Repair Schedule (PRS). Actions and drills upon encountering enemy or an NBC threat are followed.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The MRT leader responds to a repair / recovery request: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. notifies crew to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) de-camouflage the vehicle (2) parade the vehicle (3) perform radio check (4) load ammunition (5) load rations (6) load any special equipment required b. receives a tactical briefing from maintenance platoon CP, to include main, alternate and return routes c. conducts a map reconnaissance 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>d. briefs CP on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) estimated time of arrival (ETA) at casualty site (2) estimated time of return (ETR) <p>e. briefs MRT crew regarding:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) nature of casualty (2) routes (3) passwords (4) code words (5) NBC / enemy threat (6) radio frequencies (7) signals (hand and light) (8) noise discipline <p>f. conducts a tactical move to the casualty site</p> <p>g. secures site:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) stops short of objective and keeps MRT vehicle under cover (2) reconnoitres the site while crew monitors the vehicle radio (3) challenges crew of casualty vehicle (4) confirms that the vehicle is the correct casualty (5) questions crew on tactical situation 			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p style="text-align: center;">at that location</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (6) sweeps immediate area if no crew is present h. when area is secure, brings the MRT vehicle forward and places it under cover i. posts sentries j. speaks to crew to discuss the nature of the problem k. advises administration company CP of expected time required to complete repair / recovery l. completes repair / recovery task. Recovery methods to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) direct tow (2) suspended tow (3) extraction m. withdraws and conducts a tactical move back to the maintenance platoon lines using a pre-selected route. <p>2. The MRT leader carries out the following actions when under enemy contact:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. while enroute to the casualty: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) conducts immediate anti-ambush drill (2) decides whether or not to complete the repair / recovery using the pre- 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>planned alternate route</p> <p>b. while at the casualty site:</p> <p>(1) consider equipment denial IAW BTS 5008, ‘Deny Equipment and Supplies’</p> <p>(2) depart site, submit contact report and return to unit lines.</p> <p>3. The MRT leader maintains contact with the administration company CP IAW SOPs:</p> <p>a. calls just prior to departing maintenance platoon location</p> <p>b. calls on arrival at the casualty site</p> <p>c. advises the CP of the estimated time to complete the repair / recovery</p> <p>d. advises the CP of changes in the situation</p> <p>e. calls when vehicle is repaired and MRT is departing the casualty site</p> <p>f. calls on arrival at the maintenance platoon location.</p> <p>4. The MRT leader completes maintenance management information system requirements and ensures that the MRT vehicle is prepared for next mission.</p>			

6009 C - PROVIDE INTEGRAL SUPPLY SERVICES**ELEMENT: LOG PL****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The platoon is conducting its primary support mission. Replenishment is cyclical and is usually conducted on a daily basis between integral and close support organizations.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon successfully achieves all assigned tasks IAW established SOPs. The performance of the logistics platoon is closely coordinated with transportation assets at the administration company command post.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The unit deploys all of its CFFET equipment. 2. Subunit demands are satisfied and commodities distributed efficiently. 3. The efficient control of the unit supply accounts is maintained. 4. Replenishment demands for the unit are consolidated and submitted to the CS service battalion IAW unit reports and returns outlined in SOPs. 5. Receipt and carriage of materials for the unit is coordinated. 6. Repairable/re-usable materiel is processed. 7. Coordination and control of supply services are provided to include: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. laundry 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
b. sanitation			
c. technical services			
d. local purchase orders (LPO), as applicable.			
8. Hazardous material is controlled IAW SOPs.			

6010 C - PROVIDE FOOD SERVICES**ELEMENT: RATION PL****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The tactical situation permits the delivery, preparation, and consumption of fresh rations. Set-up and operation of field kitchens are the responsibility of the unit Kitchen Officer (KO).

TASK STANDARD:

Fresh rations and ice are demanded, received, bulk-broken as necessary, and distributed to subunit kitchens. Kitchens provide satisfying meals in a timely fashion. Proper hygiene and sanitation procedures are observed.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The KO plans the unit food service requirements as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. advises the OC Administration company, through the QM, on unit feeding b. conducts ration and menu planning c. maintains the unit ration accounts d. holds and accounts for the unit's cooking equipment e. demands and maintains the supply of fresh rations f. conducts liaison with the brigade G4 staff on all ration and dietary matters g. provides decentralized field kitchens and fresh ration feeding 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> h. conducts confirmatory tours of kitchens for hygiene and messing standards i. conducts bulk-breaking of rations for subunit kitchens. <p>2. The kitchen is effectively operated:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. nutritious and satisfying meals are served b. Set-up and operation of kitchens includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) siting of grease traps (2) siting of wash stands and the pre-drip area for plates are located near the entrance to the kitchen (3) availability of safety equipment IAW SOPs c. the standard of hygiene is maintained: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) a minimum of one toilet for exclusive use of the cooks is located in close proximity to the kitchen (2) an ablution stand is available for the exclusive use of the cooks (3) cooks wash daily (4) appropriate head-dress is worn while employed in the kitchen (5) no facial camouflage is applied (6) normal dress is worn when outside kitchen lines. 			

6011 C/D - CONDUCT RUNNING / BATTLE RESUPPLY**ELEMENT: PL / COY****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The platoon / company has been directed to receive supplies or has determined that resupply is necessary. The higher commander may designate a resupply location or the platoon / company may be responsible to coordinate a location with the echelon or supply element. Enemy contact is possible.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon / company successfully completes resupply operations to replenish its basic load of critical supplies while maintaining security.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The platoon / company enters resupply location from correct direction and on time. 2. The platoon / company responds properly to the challenge given by the sentry. 3. The platoon / company moves up and picks up ammo. 4. The platoon / company moves up and picks up POL. 5. The platoon WO / CSM carries out concurrent activities at the echelon vehicle: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. submits vehicle state and ADREP b. breaks down ammo if necessary c. exchanges water cans d. picks up rations 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> e. turns over garbage f. picks up ADREP items such as personnel equipment, parts, mail, canteen supplies, etc g. conducts crew replacement if applicable. <p>6. The platoon / company maintains security by:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. minimizing noise b. vehicle heaters switched off c. radio speakers switched off d. headsets stowed inside e. minimizing use of lights f. ensuring personnel are properly dressed and equipped when dismounted g. vehicle engines switched off, if tactical situation permits h. ensuring a radio watch is maintained at all times i. ensuring the task was completed within the time given in orders. <p>7. Applicable safety and environmental procedures were followed.</p>			

6021 B/C - CONSTRUCT A NON-STANDARD BRIDGE (NSB)**ELEMENT: PNR SECT / PL****ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)****CONDITIONS:**

The platoon receives orders to construct an MLC 16 timber stringer / timber deck NSB to span over a small gap. The platoon has all necessary personnel and equipment. Construction materials are available locally. Site conditions are good. Enemy interference is possible and site security is not provided.

TASK STANDARD:

Proper design is completed prior to commencement of construction using the NSB design proforma. The platoon constructs the MLC 16 NSB no later than the time specified in orders. Timings include stores off-loading, but not the preparation of bridge approaches.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The platoon commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure.' 2. Reconnaissance elements conduct a gap reconnaissance IAW BTS 3011, 'Conduct Engineer / Pioneer Reconnaissance,' and BTS 3013, 'Reconnoitre a Gap Crossing Site.' 3. The platoon moves into suitable Zulu harbour. The platoon establishes task site security and maintains OPSEC throughout IAW BTS 3001, 'Maintains Operations Security.' 4. If dimensioned lumber or squared wood is to be used, construction materials arrive on site in proper order. 5. If construction materials are to be cut locally, the platoon employs safe tree felling and cutting procedures 			

INFANTRY BATTLE TASK STANDARDS

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
<p>(eg. chain saw safety).</p> <p>6. The Bridge Commander prepares the site for construction as necessary (eg. preps banks / abutments).</p> <p>7. The Bridge Commander constructs the bridge ensuring that acceptable construction methods are used and the following conditions are met:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. bridge is constructed IAW design b. abutments are behind safe angle of repose (SAR) positions c. bridge is constructed level d. structural members are properly connected together e. safety guidelines are adhered to throughout construction. <p>8. The platoon submits periodic task status reports IAW SOPs.</p>			